

PART ONE

UNITS

Units

1, 2, 3,  Revision 

4, 5, 6,  Revision 

7, 8, 9,  Revision 

Prepared and written by

Mr. Mahrous Ahmed Haikal

Senior Teacher of English

Sahel Seleem – Assiut

01229603498

mahrousaahmed@facebook.com

mahrousaahmed77@yahoo.com

Unit 1

Writers and Stories

LISTENING



Interviewer : When did you start writing?

Writer : I first wrote stories and poems when I was at primary school.

Interviewer : What was the first thing you wrote?

Writer : When I was seven, I wrote a poem which won second prize in a national competition for school children.

Interviewer : When did you start writing stories?

Writer : When I was at university I wrote short stories for a student magazine. My head was always full of ideas. While I was finishing one story, I was planning the next one.

Interviewer : Didn't you get confused?

Writer : Not really. I used to write very quickly- I finished most short stories in two or three days. As soon as I had finished one story, I started the next one .

Interviewer : Do you still write like that?

Writer : No, I don't write short stories now. Now I only write novels. They take much longer.

Interviewer : So how do you write now? Do you have a fixed routine?

Writer : Yes. I write from nine in the morning till three in the afternoon, with a ten-minute break for coffee at midday.

Interviewer : Do you use a computer?

Writer : No, I'm old-fashioned. I use a pencil and paper. I used a computer for a few weeks, but it gave me a headache. So, first I write something by hand, then my secretary types it onto the computer. My publisher insists that I send everything as an e-mail attachment.

Interviewer : How many words do you usually write?

Writer : I write one thousand new words a day for a week, then I spend two or three days checking the week's work until I'm completely happy. I'd changed my last novel six times before I was happy with it.

Interviewer : Do you show other people?

Writer : No, not until a novel's almost finished. Then I give it to two or three good friends and ask them for the opinions.

Interviewer : Do they ever tell you they don't like what you've written?

Writer : Yes! Last year both of the people who read one of my books said they didn't like how my story ended. So I changed it.

Interviewer : What did you think of the ending of your last story?

Writer : When I finished it, I thought it was my best ending yet!

Interviewer : That's very interesting. Thank you for talking to me.

Writer : You're welcome.



Reading

Yehia Haqqi (1905-1992)

Yehia Haqqi was one of the **pioneers** of modern Egyptian Literature. **As well as being** an important writer, he was an **expert on** Arab culture. Yehia Haqqi was born in 1905 in Sayyida Zeinab **district** of Cairo. He **graduated in law** and worked for a short time as a **lawyer**. In 1929, he began his **career** as a **diplomat** and he worked **abroad** for more than 20 years. The time he spent in France, Italy, Turkey and Libya **gave** him **experiences** he later used in his writing. At the same time as he was working, Haqqi was also writing stories. His first short story , **published** in 1925, **established** him **as** one of the great short story writers of the **Arab** world. Haqqi always wanted to help poor and **disabled** people. He had to go to hospital after an **earthquake** in Cairo, but he gave his bed to a poor person who he thought needed it more.

In 1955, he wrote a **collection of** short stories about the poor and **the disabled** which won an important prize. Another of his stories, *the Postman*, was made into a film. Haqqi wrote in a new way about Arab **society** and **customs** in the twentieth century. Haqqi was also interested in the **Arabic** language and he developed a new **style** of writing which is **respected** today. As well as writing his own novels and stories, Haqqi also translated Russian, French, Italian and Turkish literature into Arabic. He was a very strong **believer** in the **power of** education and **supported** many young Egyptian writers. Haqqi died in 1992, but **is still thought of as the father of** the modern short story and the novel in Egypt.

VOCABULARY

write (v.)	يكتب	publish (v.)	ينشر (كتاب/مجلة)
writer (n.)	كاتب	publisher (n.)	ناشر
writing (n.)	كتابة	publication (n.)	نشر / طباعة
written (adj.)	مكتوب	e-mail (n.)	بريد الكتروني
author (n.)	مؤلف	attachment (n.)	إرفاق/ الحاق
novelist (n.)	روائي	attach (v.)	يوصل/ يرفق
journalist (n.)	صحفي	almost (adv.)	تقريباً
politician (n.)	سياسي	believe (v.)	يؤمن
diplomat (n.)	دبلوماسي	believer (n.)	مؤمن
literature (n.)	ادب	belief (n.)	إعتقاد
poet (n.)	شاعر	collect (v.)	يجمع
poetry (n.)	شعر	collection (n.)	مجموعة
poetic (adj.)	شعري	custom (n.)	عادة
poems (n.)	قصائد	customary (adj.)	تقليدي
novels (n.)	روايات	disability (n.)	إعاقة
fiction (n.)	خيال	disabled (adj.)	معاق/ معطل
adventure (n.)	مغامرة	district (n.)	حي/ مقاطعة
average (n.)	متوسط	establish (v.)	يؤسس
confuse (v.)	يربك/ يغير	establishment (n.)	تأسيس
confused (adj.)	مرتبك/ محترار	established (adj.)	عريق/ مؤسس
confusing (adj.)	مربك/ محير	law (n.)	قانون
confusion (n.)	ارتباك/ حيرة	lawyer (n.)	محامي
insist (v.)	يصر	pioneer (n.)	رائد
insistence (n.)	إصرار	pioneering (adj.)	ريادي
insistent (n.)	مُصر	style (n.)	أسلوب
midday (adv.)	منتصف النهار	stylish (adj.)	راقي
midnight (adv.)	منتصف الليل	stylist (n.)	مصمم ملابس
fashion (n.)	موضة	modern (adj.)	حديث
fashionable (adj.)	على الموضة	expert (n.)	خبير
old-fashioned (adj.)	موضة قديمة	graduate (n.\v.)	يتخرج/ خريج
routine (n.)	روتين	graduation (n.)	تخرج
routinely (adv.)	بشكل روتيني	career (n.)	حياة مهنية

remember (v.)	يتذكر	abroad (adv.)	خارج البلاد
remind (v.)	يذكر	experience (n.)	خبرة (لا تعد)
prize (n.)	جائزة	experiences (n.)	تجارب حياتية
competition (n.)	مسابقة	postman (n.)	بوسطجى
national (adj.)	قومى	earthquake (n.)	بركان
paper (n.)	ورق (لا تعد)	interview (n.\v.)	حوار / يحاور
type (v)	يكتب بلوحة مفاتيح	interviewer (n.)	محاو
pray (v.)	يصلى	interviewee (n.)	متحاو معه
prayer (n.)	مصلى	support (v.)	يساند / يدعم
coach (n.)	مدرب	supporter (n.)	مؤيد / مساند
later (adv.)	فيما بعد	hotel manager (n.)	مدير فندق
The poor (n.)	الفقراء	culture (n.)	ثقافة
The disabled (n.)	المعاقين	cultural (adj.)	ثقافى
develop (v.)	يطور / ينمى	look (v.)	يبدو
development (n.)	تطوير / تنمية	sound (v.)	يبدو
deveolped (adj.)	متطور	secretary (n.)	سكرتيرة
developing (adj.)	نامى	secretarial (adj.)	خاص بالسكرتارية
translate (v.)	يترجم	every day (adv.)	كل يوم
translation (n.)	ترجمة	everday (adj.)	يومى
retire (v.)	يتقاعد	flat (n.)	شقة
retired (adj.)	متقاعد	parents (n.)	والدين
retirement (n.)	تقاعد	taste (n.)	مذاق / يتذوق
train (n.)	يدرّب / يتدرب	lemons (n.)	ليمون
training (n.)	تدريب	obey (adj.)	يطيع
affect (v.)	يؤثر	obedient (n.)	مطيع
effect (n.)	تأثير	obedience (adj.)	طاعة
effective (adj.)	فعال	typical (n.)	نمطى

Prepositions حروف جر

full of	ملىء بـ	graduate in	يتخرج فى
in the morning	فى الصباح	a graduate of	خريج من
in the afternoon	بعد الظهر	work for	يعمل لدى
at midday	فى منتصف النهار	the power of	قوة الـ
happy with	سعيد بـ	know about	يعرف عن
type onto	يكتب على	give up	يستسلم / يتبرع
both of	كلا من	a taste of	مذاق
thank...for	يشكر....على	go out	تنطفئ (الشمس/النار)
talk to	يتحدث لـ	send....with	يرسل....مع....
write with	يكتب بـ	a way of	طريقة لـ
One of.....	واحد من	win a prize in	يفوز بجائزة فى
expert on	خبير فى	the father of	رائد
available for	متوافر / متاح لـ	style of	اسلوب لـ

Expressions تعبيرات

short stories	قصص قصيرة	the Arab world	العالم العربى
science fiction	خيال علمى	Arab society	المجتمع العربى
adventure stories	قصص مغامرة	Arab culture	الثقافة العربية
take much longer	يستغرق طويلا	Arabic language	اللغة العربية
a fixed routine	روتين ثابت	established him as	ترقى به كـ
a ten-minute break	راحة لمدة ١٠ دقائق	the twentieth century	القرن العشرون
give me a headache	يسبب لى صداعا	give his bed to	يتبرع بسريره لـ
e-mail attachment	ارفاق بالبريد الالكترونى	give someone a respected position	يعطى شخص ما مكانة محترمة
win a prize in	يفوز بجائزة فى	As far as I'm concerned	بم اننى مهتم
primary school	مدرسة ابتدائى	sports team	فريق رياضى
return home	يعود للمنزل	people's lives	حيوات الناس
prepare lunch	يجهز الغداء	is still thought of as	ما زال يفكر فيه كـ
break his leg	يكسر ساقه	create a style	يبتكر أسلوب
give him experiences	تعطيه تجارب حياتية	the lights went out	انطفأت الانوار
black and white photos	صور ابيض واسود	the sun went down	غربت الشمس
during the holidays	اثناء الاجازات	twentieth-century writer	كاتب فى القرن ٢٠
heart transplant	زرع قلب	sound very busy	يبدو مشغولا جدا
follow customs	يتبع العادات	Obey rules	يطيع القوانين
change a story	يغير قصة	political reports	تقارير سياسية
was made into a film	حولت الى فيلم	newspaper articles	مقالات صحفية
have a routine	لديه روتين		

Make vs do

Make - made -made	Do - did - done
make a decision	do research
make a mistake	do an operation
make a difference to	do a transplant
make arrangements	do a test \ exam
make up	do the washing up
make a suggestion	do homework\work
make parts	do a favour
make a speech	do wrong
make use of	do his best
make sense	do well
make the bed	do without
make noise	do a report on
make a deal	do the designing
makericher	do exercise
make a name for	do repairs
make friends	do studies

make do with	يرضى بـ	do a job	يقوم بعمل وظيفة
make recommendations	يقدم توصيات	do customs	يفعل عادات
make = become = be	يصبح/ يكون	do a sport	يؤدى رياضة
make + Obj. + Inf.	يجعل	do a survey	يقوم بعمل استبيان
make things	يصنع اشياء	do things	يفعل اشياء
make a table	يصنع منضدة	do experiments	يجرى تجارب
make an advertisement	يصمم اعلان	do duty	يؤدى واجب
make a poster	يصمم ملصق اعلاني	do judo	يمارس رياضة الجودو
make a plan	يضع خطة	do in office	يعمل فى مكتب

Definitions تعريفات

- 1 - average** متوسط
- the amount that you get by adding several quantities together and then dividing the result by the number of quantities.
- 2 - confused** ارتباك (confusion - محير - confusing - يربك/يخير confuse) مرتبك / محتار
- unable to understand something clearly.
- 3 - insist** يصر على (persist in - مُصر - insistent - اصرار insistence)
- to demand that something should be done.
- 4 - midday** منتصف النهار
- twelve o'clock in the middle of the day.
- 5 - poetry** شعر (poem قصيدة - شعري poetic - شاعر poet)
- the art of writing poems.
- 6 - old-fashioned** (fashionable على الموضة) موضة قديمة
- not modern and not fashionable any more.
- 7 - routine** روتين (routinely بشكل روتيني)
- a usual way in which you do things.
- 8 - secretary** سكرتيرة (secretarial خاص بالسكرتارية)
- someone whose job is to type letters, arrange meetings, answer telephone calls, etc. in an office.
- 9 - publisher** ناشر (publication - ينشر publish)
- a person or company that produces books, magazines, etc., and makes them available for people to buy.
- 10 - attachement** ارتباط (attachment - يرفق بـ attach) ارفاق / مرفق
- something you attach to\send with an e-mail.
- 11 - believer** ايمان/ اعتقاد (belief - يصدق/يؤمن believe) مؤمن / مصدق
- someone who believes that a particular idea or thing is very good.
- 12 - collection** مجموعة من اشياء متشابهة
- a set of similar things that you keep together.
- 13 - custom** (custom جمارك - تقليدي customary) عادة مجتمع
- things that people do because they are traditional.

14 - disabled معاق

- someone who can't use part of their body.

15 - district حي / مقاطعة

- an area of a town or city.

16 - establish (مؤسسه/ تأسيس establishment - عريق established) يؤسس / يرقى

- to give someone a respected position in society or in an organization.

17 - law قانون (قانونى lawyer - محامى lawful)

- a system of rules that people must obey.

18 - pioneer رائد (ريادة pioneering - يتريد pioneer)

- one of the first people to do something that others will continue to develop.

19 - style اسلوب

- a way of doing things that is typical of a particular person , group or period.

► **publish**► **come out**► **spread**

(ينشر (مجلة او كتاب) - (تبني للمبنى للمجهول)

تصدر / يصدر (لا تبني للمجهول)

ينشر / تنتشر (مرض او خبر)

Ex: His first novel was published in a magazine.Ex: His first novel came out in a magazine.Ex: The plague has spread in my village especially among children.Ex: His first short story, **published** in 1925, established him as one of.....لاحظ في المثال الاخير كلمة **published** استخدمت كتصريف ثالث بدلا من ضمير الوصل وفعل **to be** والجملة اصلها:Ex: His first short story, **which was published** in 1925, established him as- ولا يجوز استخدام **came out** بدلا من **published** في هذه الجملة لان **come out** لا تبني للمجهول.► **experience** (n.)

خبرة (اسم لا يعد)

► **experience** (n. \ v.)

تجربة حياتية (اسم يعد) - يجرب

► **experiment** (n.)

تجربة معملية (اسم يعد)

► **expertise** (n.)

خبرة في مجال محدد (خبرة مهنية/ علمية/ طبية) (اسم لا يعد)

Ex: Old people who retired from work have a lot of experience.Ex: Travelling abroad gave him a lot of experiences that he later used in his writings.Ex: Students always do experiments in their science lab.Ex: We have the expertise to help you run your own business.► **mixture of**

خليط من أشياء غير متجانسة (لا يحدث بينهم تفاعل كيميائي)

► **collection of**

مجموعة من أشياء متجانسة / متشابهة

► **combination of**

اتحاد/ دمج/ مزيج

► **compound**

مركب (كيميائي)

► **component**

مكون/ عنصر (جزء او عنصر من مركب)

Ex: Mix the eggs, flour and butter. Put the mixture in the oven.Ex: I have a good collection of books \ novels \ jewellery.Ex: The film is a magnificent combination of drama, dance and music.Ex: Hydrogen is a component of all organic compounds.► **every day** (adv.)

كل يوم

► **everyday** (adj.)

يومي / يومية

Ex: I have no fixed routine, every day is different.Ex: His story is not about everyday life. It is a fictional story.

- **expert on** خبير فى (مجال عام)
 ► **expert in** خبير فى (تخصص)
 ► **expert at** خبير فى (نشاط)

Ex: He is an expert on modern literature.

Ex: He is expert in the modern novel.

Ex: He is expert at making stylish shoes.

- **custom** عادة شعب
 ► **habit** عادة شخصية
 ► **tradition** تقليد / مرتبط بالقديم

Ex: It is an Egyptian custom to eat Konafa in Ramadan.

Ex: Biting your nails is a bad habit.

Ex: It is a global tradition to wear black as a symbol of mourning.

- **routine** روتين يومى
 ► **red-tape** روتين حكومى

Ex: I don't have a fixed routine. Every day is different.

Ex: I hate the red-tape of official rules that seem more complicated than necessary.

- **Arab** (countries – people – society- children- culture) عربى / مرتبط بالعرب
 ► **Arabic** (literature- language- poetry- script) خاص باللغة العربية
 ► **Arabian** (camel- beauty- peninsula) خاص بشبه الجزيرة العربية

Ex: Arab people like writing Arabic poetry.

Ex: I like to study Arabic literature.

Ex: Oman and Saudi Arabia are two Arab countries in the Arabian peninsula.

- **the** (poor – rich – young- disabled- blind)

- عند وضع **the** قبل الصفة للعاقل فاننا نعنى كل الناس فمثلا **the poor** تعنى الفقراء اى **poor people** ويأتى بعدها فعل جمع.

Ex: Poor people are in need of rich people.

Ex: The poor are in need of the rich.

- **S. + insist on + V-ing \ noun** يصر على
 ► **S. + insist that + S. + Inf.\should + Inf.** يصر ان
 ► **S. + persist in + V-ing \ noun** يصر على

Ex: He insisted on going to the dentist alone.

Ex: My publisher insists that I send everything as an email attachment.

Ex: The criminals persist in denying all the charges.



Expressing opinions

التعبير عن الآراء

Giving opinions

- In my opinion, I think.....
- As far as I'm concerned,.....
- If you ask me, I would say.....
- As I see it, I think\ I don't think.....

Grammar

أزمنة الماضي Past Tenses

• The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

❖ يتكون الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثانى للفعل بإضافة (d - ed - ied) للفعل ما عدا الأفعال الشاذة

Ex: I visited my uncle last week.

Ex: I played football yesterday.

❖ ولكن تذكر تصريفات الافعال الاساسية:

	To be	To have	To do
Affirmative	was, were	had	did
Negation	wasn't, weren't	didn't have	didn't

Ex: Sahar was at school yesterday.

Ex: I didn't have a car last year.

Ex: Ali did his homework last night.

❖ يستخدم فى الجملة الشرطية فى الحالة الثانية من قاعدة If.

Ex: If he played well, he would win the match.

❖ يستخدم الماضي البسيط بعد التعبيرات الاتية اذا اتى بعدها فاعل وهى.

S. + would rather + Sub. + past simple.

It is time + Sub. + past simple.

Ex: I'd rather Sama left early.

Ex: It is time we left home.

❖ يستخدم مع used to للتعبير عن عادات فى الماضي.

Ex: I used to go to school on foot.

S. + used to + Inf. =

S. + no longer + present simple =

S. + don't \ doesn't + inf. + any longer \ any more

❖ يستخدم مع wish ليدل على أن الأمنية أو الافتراض غير حقيقى .

Ex: I wish I were a doctor.

❖ الكلمات الدالة عليه :-

yesterday - ago - once - in the past - in ancient times - one day - last (week - month ...)

Ex: Last week He gave a party.

Ex: I visited my uncle a week ago.

❖ نفى الماضي البسيط :- عند نفي الماضي البسيط نستخدم (المصدر + didn't).

Ex: I finished my work. —————> I didn't finish my work.

• **Structures to describe a past habit** تعبيرات تدل على العادة فى الماضي

• **Subject + past verb**

• **Subject + used to + Inf.**

• **It was + name's / منمير ملكية + habit to + Inf.**

• **Subject + was / were + in the habit of + v-ing**

Ex: Enas drank milk when she was young.

Ex: Enas used to drink milk when she was young.

Ex: It was Enas's habit to drink milk when she was young.

Ex: Enas was in the habit of drinking milk when she was young.

2- Past continues tense: زمن الماضي المستمر

التكوين :

I, He, she, it, singular → was + V-ing
 you, we, they, plural → were + V-ing

الكلمات الدالة عليه:

While, as, just as, when, all day yesterday, at.....yesterday

الاستخدام:

أولاً : يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في لحظة ما في الماضي.

S. + was, were +V-ing.....at.....yesterday.

Ex: I was sleeping at nine o'clock yesterday.

Ex: Ali was eating his lunch at noon yesterday.□

ثانيا : يستخدم ليبر عن حدث بسيط قطع حدث مستمرا في الماضي. (القاطع ماضى بسيط والمستمر ماضى مستمر)

While\As\ Just as + S. + was, were +V-ing.....S. + past simple

S. + past simple.....while\ as\ Just as + S. + was, were +V-ing.....

Ex: While I was doing my homework, the light went out.

Ex: The telephone rang while I was sleeping.□

When + S. + past simple.....S. + was, were +V-ing

S. + past simplewhen + S. + was, were +V-ing

Ex: When my father came, I was sleeping.

Ex: I was doing my homework when my mother went out.□

ثالثا : يستخدم ليبر عن حدثان كانا مستمران في لحظة ما في الماضي. (لم يقطع احدهما الاخر)

While\As\ Just as + S. + was, were +V-ing.....S. + was\were +V-ing

S. + was\were + V-ing.....while\ as\ Just as + S. + was, were +V-ing.....

Ex: While my mother was cooking, dad was watching TV.

Ex: Aml was studying while her brother was playing.□

ملاحظات:

- اذا اتى بعد while ماضى بسيط فلا بد ان ياتي قبلها ماضى بسيط.

Ex: While I was on holiday, I met my old friend.

- يستخدم ايضا الماضي المستمر لاعطاء مبررات في الماضي.

Ex: I couldn't answer the phone because I was having a shower.□

- يمكن ان تحل during محل while ولكن ياتي بعدها اسم او شبه جملة. (لا ياتي V-ing بعد during)

During + noun\ noun phrase, S. Past simple.

Ex: During my stay, I visited a lot of places.

3 - The Past Perfect Tense زمن الماضي التام**- Formation**

Active : Subject + had \ had not + p.p

Passive : Object + had \ had not + been + p.p

- Usage

(1) ويستخدم الماضي التام ليبر عن حدث حدث قبل حدث اخر في الماضي. (أى انه عندما يكون لدينا حدثين واحدهما حدث قبل الاخر في الماضي فان الحدث الاول يكون في زمن الماضي التام والحدث الاخر يكون في زمن الماضي البسيط)

Ex: I had finished my homework. Then I watched the film.

وغالبا ما يستخدم زمن الماضي التام مع الروابط الآتية:

After, as soon as, by the age of + (Past perfect) → (Past simple)
Before , by the time, By....., When + (past simple) → (Past perfect)
Subject + didn't + Inf. ← till , until → (past perfect)

ولكن مع وجود احد افعال الانتظار فانه:

S. + had waited\ remained\ stayed.....till\ until + S. + past simple.

Ex: **After** I **had bought** my shopping, I **went** home.

Ex: **By the age of** ten, I **had learnt** to ride a bicycle.

Ex: **After** I **had arrived** my father **left**. (I saw him.)

Ex: **By the time** I **arrived** home, my father **had left**. (I didn't see him.)

Ex: I **didn't go** out **till \ until** I **had finished** my work.

Ex: I **had waited** him **till** he came.

Ex: I **had taken** a shower **before** I went out.

(٢) ويستخدم الماضي التام لإعطاء مبررات فى الماضى.

Ex: He **went** to hospital **because** he **had eaten** bad food.

(٣) ويستخدم الماضي التام مع الروابط الآتية:

• S + had + **no sooner** + P.P.....**than** + S + past simple

• S + had + **hardly\scarcely\rarely** + P.P.....**when** + S + past simple.

Ex: He had no sooner arrived home than he slept.

Ex: He had hardly arrived home when he slept.

ولكنه عند البدء باحد هذه الروابط فانه:

• **No sooner** + had + S + P.P.....**than** + S + past simple.

• **Hardly \ Scarcely \ Rarely** + had + S + P.P...**when** + S + past simple.

Ex: No sooner had he arrived home than he slept.

(٤) ويستخدم الماضي التام مع الآتى:

• **It was only when** + S + had + P.P.....**that** + S + past simple

• **It wasn't until** + S + had + P.P**that** + S + past simple

Ex: It was not until he had built a house that he married.

Ex: It was only when he had built a house that he married.

(٥) يأتى ماضى تام بعد الافعال الآتية فى الماضى وهى:

.....discovered\found\ realized\ knew.....S. + had + P.P

Ex: When I arrived home I found that I had forgotten my book at school.

(٤) ويستخدم الماضي التام بعد By then بمعنى بحلول ذلك الوقت:

• **S. + past simple. By then + S. + had + P.P**

Ex: He arrived home at 11 o'clock yesterday. By then, the rain had stopped.

ملاحظات هامة على الماضي التام:

(١) إذا لم يأتى بعد **after, before** فاعل فانه يأتى بعدهم فعل به **ing**.

Ex: **After** doing my homework, I went out.

Ex: **Before** going to the cinema, I had studied my lessons.

(٢) يمكن استخدام **Having + P.P** بدلا من **After \ as soon as + S + had + P.P**

Ex: **After** I had ironed the shirt, I went out.

Ex: Having ironed the shirt, I went out.

(٣) يمكن استخدام **On\Immediately on + V-ing** بدلاً من **After\as soon as + S + had + P.P**

Ex: As soon as he had arrived home, he slept.

Ex: On arriving home, he slept.

(٤) يمكن ان ياتى اسم بعد **after\before + noun**

Ex: After the arrival of the manager, we started the meeting.

Ex: He had lived a happy life before the death of his father.

(٥) يمكن ان يكون الحدثين مع الرابط فى زمن الماضى البسيط وهذا يدل على التزامن اى ان الحدثين تقريبا حدثا فى نفس الوقت.

Ex: When I arrived the station , the train left.

Ex: As soon as Mr Mahrous arrived, we started the lesson.

(٦) ياتى بعد **before that** ماضى تام ويأتى بعد **after that** ماضى بسيط.

Ex: I watched the film but before that I had done my homework.

Ex: I had had a shower , after that I went out.

(٧) يمكن استخدام الكلمات الدالة على المضارع التام (**ever, never, just, already, yet, since, for**) مع الماضى التام بشرط وجود جملة ماضى بسيط.

Ex: I have already finshed my work.

(هنا جملة واحدة لذلك استخدمنا المضارع التام)

Ex: I had already finished my work when he came. (هنا جملتان ماضى تام و ماضى بسيط) □

(٨) يمكن ان نستخدم الفعل مضافا له **V-ing** فى اول الجملة بدلا من الرابط وفاعل وفعل ويسمى باسم الفاعل.

Ex: **Arriving** at his house, Kareem discovered that he had forgotten his key.

4 - The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

- Formation

Active : Subject + have\has + p.p

Passive : Object + have\has + been + p.p

- Usage

□ يستخدم المضارع التام ليعبر عن حدث حدث فى الماضى ومازال مستمرا حتى الان او مازال له اثر باق حتى الان.

- Key words

Just, already, ever, never, yet, since, for, lately, recently, so far, up till now, over the ages.....etc.□

وسيتتم شرحا بالتفصيل فى الوحدة القادمة بالتفصيل.

Homework

1) Choose the correct answer :

1. A.....is someone who produces books, newspapers or magazines.
a. diver b. publisher c. journalist d. correspondent
2. My sister loves clothes and buys very.....dresses.
a. fashionable b. old-fashioned c. stylistic d. fashions
3. I don't really follow a.....during the holidays. I like being spontaneous.
a. workday b. routine c. diary d. agents
4. My friends and I are going to enter an athletics.....
a. competition b. show c. tournament d. racing
5. Yehia Haqqi came from a poor.....of Cairo.
a. district b. street c. outskirts d. slums
6. My brother wants to be a lawyer, so he's studying.....
a. statistics b. act c. law d. regulation
7. Magdi Yacoub was one of the first heart transplant.....
a. astronauts b. pioneers c. scholars d. majors
8. Scientists are paid to.....new medicines every year to help people.
a. establish b. engineer c. work out d. develop
9. The villagers couldn't change their traditional.....that they used to.
a. customs b. practices c. fireworks d. habits
10. Early black and white photos show people in.....clothes.
a. fashion b. old-fashioned c. fashionable d. modern
11. The sun is at its strongest at.....
a. midday b. night c. down d. morning
12. I sent an e-mail with two.....They were photos of my friends
a. attachments b. attach c. attaching d. attached
13. I really enjoy this book. It is written in a very simple.....
a. handwriting b. cover c. style d. calligraphy
14. Khalid wants to be a.....so he can work for the government.
a. political b. politics c. politician d. population
15. Yehia Haqqi was an important..... – century writer.
a. twenty b. twentieth c. twenties d. twin
17. My class a survey about people's use of energy.
a. made b. did c. invented d. played
18. When I was at school, I won a poetry writing.....
a. composition b. competition c. game d. article
19. She sent me the report as an e-mail.....
a. attachment b. letter c. picture d. article
20. My daily.....starts when my alarm clock goes off at 6.30
a. routine b. habit c. custom d. way
21.is twelve o'clock in the day.
a. Midday b. Midnight c. Midyear d. Midmonth

22.is twelve o'clock at night.
a. Midday b. Midnight c. Midyear d. Midmonth
23. My parents gave me a.....of modern short stories for my birthday.
a. mixture b. combination c. collection d. compounds
24. He was born in a poor.....in Cairo.
a. district b. restrict c. instruct d. direct
25. Eating Konaffa in Ramadan is an Egyptian.....
a. costume b. custom c. routine d. tradition
26. Egypt is a.....country in the Middle East.
a. pioneer b. pioneering c. pioneers d. panorama
27. The city has eight, each with a representative on the City Council.
a. distinctions b. disruptions c. districts d. disputes
28. Hundreds of athletes from across the nation came to in the games.
a. complete b. conflict c. compete d. delete
29. It is the to greet someone when you meet them.
a. routine b. custom c. prize d. customer
30. Using a typewriter is Now we use computers.
a. poetic b. vague c. ancient d. old-fashioned
31. Dr Fathi has performed a new type of surgery. He is considered a(n) in his field.
a. routine b. pioneer c. complication d. explorer
32. This author uses long, complex sentences. That is her of writing.
a. routine b. pen c. fashion d. style
33. With his book The Country of Men, Hisham Matar has become a(n) author.
a. established b. literal c. eventual d. artistic
34. The of vaccines to prevent diseases has helped to save many lives.
a. styling b. development c. establishment d. custom
35. When therequires you to follow a rule, you can receive a penalty if you disregard it.
a. style b. law c. pioneer d. custom
36. In eastern countries, it is to remove your shoes before you enter a home.
a. legal b. pioneering c. routine d. customary
37. The author's books are very successful, so I think that he will easily find a..... for his next book.
a. polisher b. publisher c. publicer d. culture
38. My mother has a.....that children learn best by playing games.
a. believe b. believer c. belief d. beef
39. Although Nawal has a....., she is very good at sports.
a. disabled b. disability c. disable d. disorder
40. We usually take a 30-.....break at a school.
a. minutes b. minute c. minutes' d. minute's
41. Ali's cousin is.....and cannot walk very well.
a. abled b. disability c. distorted d. disabled
42. In my grandfather's village, they still follow the same traditional..... that he used to follow when he was a boy.
a. customs b. costumes c. customers d. habits

43. Have you.....any arrangements for the holidays?
a. did b. played c. made d. given
44. I can't come out because I've got to.....the washing up.
a. make b. do c. eat d. design
45. You have.....two mistakes in the test.
a. did b. played c. made d. given
46. Ali.....a good job when he made that new table.
a. did b. played c. made d. given
47. Our teacher asked us to.....a survey about the Egyptian customs.
a. make b. do c. eat d. design
48. My uncle is a clever carpenter and alwaystables and chairs.
a. makes b. does c. eats d. designs
49. He's going to.....a speech.
a. make b. do c. eat d. design
50. The computer.....a noise.
a. did b. played c. made d. given
51. The Postman by Yehia Haqqi was.....into a film.
a. done b. played c. made d. given
52. Yehia Haqqi wrote a collection of short stories which.....an important prize.
a. gained b. won c. earned d. gave
53. He.....his bed to a poor person who he thought needed it more.
a. made b. did c. gave d. destroyed
54. He asked his secretary to.....this letter onto the computer.
a. type b. write c. tip d. dip
55. To work as a secretary, you need to have.....skills.
a. secret b. secretive c. secretarial d. serial
56. We tried to persuade him not to go but he was very.....
a. insist b. insistent c. insistance d. insisting
57. You can't compare the.....of watching live theatre with watching a film.
a. experience b. experiment c. explanation d. exploration
58. Dr Zewail is more than just a noble laureate, he is a/an.....in chemistry.
a. investor b. explorer c. pioneer d. politician
59. I really admire Charles Dickens as a novelist as his writing.....is unique.
a. behaviour b. attitude c. style d. conduct
60. My daily.....begins when my alarm clock goes off at 6:30.
a. routine b. custom c. red tape d. tradition
61. Please,the file to your e-mail and send it quickly.
a. attach b. establish c. connect d. enclose
62. Yehia Haqqi knew a lot about Arab.....
a. lecture b. culture c. sculpture d. puncture
63. Al Anfoushi is a.....of Alexandria where Abu Heif was born.
a. restrict b. distract c. respect d. district
64. All Egyptian families spend a/an.....of 2000 pounds a month.
a. average b. coverage c. variety d. very
65. A.....is a person who speaks for people in law courts.
a. teacher b. lawyer c. poet d. writer
66. I always have a ten-.....break for coffee at midday.
a. minute b. minutes c. minute's d. minutes'

67. Yehia Haqqi was an expert.....Arab Culture.
a. in b. on c. at d. of
68. We all believe.....Allah and all his messangers.
a. in b. on c. at d. of
69. Using the computer for too long time always.....me a headache.
a. makes b. does c. gives d. offers
70. As a writer, I spend two or three days.....the week's work.
a. check b. checked c. checking d. checker
71. As well as....., he translated many books into Arabic.
a. write b. written c. writer d. writing
72. My father is a strong.....in the power of education.
a. believer b. belief c. believe d. leaver
73. He was interested in the.....language.
a. Arab b. Arabic c. Arabian d. Arabs
74. His first story.....him as one of the great short story writers.
a. developed b. established c. built d. astonished
75. The time he spent abroad gave him many.....
a. experience b. experiences c. experts d. experiments
76. Yehia Haqqi wrote about.....society and customs.
a. Arab b. Arabic c. Arabian d. Arabs
77. His first short story,.....in 1925, made him very famous.
a. published b. came out c. was published d. publishing
78. Yehia Haqqi developed a new style of.....which is respected today.
a. write b. writing c. written d. writer
79. Not many people have read my cousin's book because she could not find a
a. library b. publisher c. bookshop d. bookseller
80. London has a/an.....of 557 mm of rain each year.
a. average b. number c. ability d. water
81. I sometimes get.....between the meanings of *whether* and *weather*.
a. confirmed b. confident c. confused d. concluded
82. Kamal did not want to tidy his room before he went out, but his mother.....
a. told b. ordered c. insisted d. said
83. I sent my friend an e-mail with a photo as an.....
a. attached b. attachment c. attack d. attractive
84. Hamid is.....and cannot walk.
a. deaf b. blind c. unable d. disabled
85. My father does the same things every day. He likes to have a.....
a. root b. work c. routine d. way
86. As.....as I'm concerned, you should go to bed early.
a. far b. long c. much d. many
87. A famous writer.....this book a year ago.
a. writes b. wrote c. had written d. was writing
88. Ia book when you phoned me last night.
a. read b. had read c. was reading d. am reading
89. We.....near a supermarket before we moved to this house.
a. were living b. had lived c. has lived d. live

90. She.....it to me while I was reading the newspaper.
a. gives b. had given c. gave d. given
91. I didn't answer the phone because I
a. had prayed b. was praying c. prayed d. praying
92. By the time Nada arrived, we.....lunch, so there was nothing for her to eat.
a. had had b. were having c. have had d. are having
93. While I was playing football, I fell and.....my leg.
a. had broken b. was breaking c. broke d. has broken
94. Iin Alexandria a month ago.
a. had been b. was c. has been d. be
95. Tarek.....dinner at noon yesterday.
a. ate b. was eating c. had eaten d. eaten
96. While I was doing my homework, my sister.....my mother.
a. helped b. had helped c. was helping d. helps
97. While Iat home, a man knocked on the door and asked for help.
a. was b. was being c. had been d. am
98. I didn't return home until Imy work.
a. has finished b. had finished c. finishing d. was finishing
99. When I had reached the station, the train..... I caught it.
a. left b. had left c. has left d. leaving
100. When he had an idea, he.....a short story.
a. was writing b. had written c. wrote d. is writing
101. She.....ill when I visited her.
a. seems b. had seemed c. seemed d. was seeming
102. When I reached the station, the train..... I missed it.
a. left b. had left c. leaving d. has left
103. I always.....breakfast before I went to school.
a. eat b. ate c. eats d. was eating
104. She.....London in 2010.
a. had visited b. has visited c. visited d. was visiting
105. I once.....the newspaper every day. Now I don't have the time.
a. was reading b. used to read c. had read d. am reading
106. As soon as we arrived at school, the first lesson.....
a. began b. begun c. had begun d. was beginning
107. Ithe film before I read the book.
a. 've already seen b. 'd already seen c. already seen d. 'll already see
108. Imy own computer for three years before anything went wrong with it.
a. have had b. had had c. had d. having
109. While she was doing her homework, my sister.....to music.
a. had listened b. listened c. was listening d. is listening
110. Yesterday evening, we.....for our English test when all the lights went out.
a. revised b. were revising c. had revised d. are revising

111. My mother made me a cake. It.....of lemons.
a. had tasted b. was tasting c. is tasting d. tasted
112. It was dark when we reached the beach because the sun.....down.
a. had gone b. went c. was going d. goes
113. After Mona had played the piano, sheher sister with her homework.
a. helped b. was helping c. had helped d. has helped
114. Nesma first met her best friend when she.....at primary school.
a. has been b. was being c. was d. is
115. What.....at midday yesterday?
a. are you doing b. were you doing c. you were doing d. have you done
116. Kamal.....an English person before he met my friend Jack.
a. did not meet b. had not met c. has not met d. won't meet
117. When we saw the hotel, we.....that it was a great place for a holiday.
a. were knowing b. had known c. have known d. knew
118. The writer wrote his first story when he.....at university.
a. was being b. had been c. was d. has been
119. Dina.....the test when the teacher told them to stop.
a. hasn't finished b. hadn't finished c. not finishing d. haven't finished
120. The police know what the thief.....at eight o'clock last night.
a. has done b. does c. was doing d. is doing
121. The tourists.....walking until they had reached the top of the mountain.
a. didn't stop b. stopped c. haven't stopped d. won't stop
122. Before there was a bus to her village, Mona and her brother.....to school.
a. had always walked b. were walking c. have always walked d. walk
123. Ithe office until I had checked that all the doors were locked.
a. wn't leave b. wouldn't leave c. hadn't left d. wasn't left
124. Those men.....our house yesterday morning.
a. had been broken b. have being broken c. had broken d. broke
125. When the police arrived at the bank, they realized that the money.....
a. had taken b. has been taken c. had been taken d. has taken
126. When I arrived home, I discovered that Imy friend's pen by mistake.
a. took b. had taken c. have taken d. was taken
127. Having.....my breakfast, I went to school.
a. had b. had had c. has d. was having
128. Immediately on.....the bad news, Ola fainted.
a. hear b. heard c. hearing d. had heard
129. Have you seen Ali? – Yes, Ihim a minute ago.
a. had seen b. saw c. seen d. have seen
130. I went to the cinema but before that Imy homework.
a. had done b. did c. has done d. was doing
131. When you arrived, Imy homework yet.
a. haven't finished b. hadn't finished c. didn't finish d. wasn't finishing
132. I always.....for a walk with my father when I was young.
a. go b. went c. had gone d. was going

2) Read the following passage , then answer the questions:

Meditation is an extreme form of concentration. It allows your mind to focus on one thing and detaches you from all worldly things. Meditation can help us to eliminate negative thoughts, worries, anxiety, and all factors that can prevent us feeling happy. Today's life is full of stress, which further influences our day to day activities. Meditation helps in reducing stress by affecting your nervous system. It has been proved that the practice of meditation, carried out on a regular basis, will mitigate the symptoms of stress and anxiety. On a physical level, meditation helps to lower high blood pressure. It improves the immune system and increases the energy level, as you gain an inner source of energy. The mind becomes fresh, delicate and beautiful with regular practice of meditation. Everyone can meditate, no matter who they are. You should commit to daily meditation, no matter for how long. Until you sit down on a cushion or on a chair, meditation won't start. The most important point is to take a comfortable seat. If you practice meditation every day for fifteen or twenty minutes, after a while when you look back, there will be no doubt of its effectiveness. It is possible for the mind to be free of thoughts.

1. What does meditation help a person to get rid of?

.....

2. How does meditation help us physically?

.....

3. How can a person start a correct meditation?

.....

4. What happens to the mind after meditating?

.....

5. Meditation is a.....sport.

- | | | | |
|-------------|-----------|---------|--------------|
| a. physical | b. social | c. team | d. spiritual |
|-------------|-----------|---------|--------------|

6. We do meditation while we are.....

- | | | | |
|------------|-------------|-------------|------------|
| a. sitting | b. standing | c. sleeping | d. walking |
|------------|-------------|-------------|------------|

7. The word mitigate means.....

- | | | | |
|-----------|---------|-----------|---------|
| a. lessen | b. lose | c. listen | d. kill |
|-----------|---------|-----------|---------|

8. Meditation is very useful.....

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|----------------------------|----------------|
| a. physically | b. mentally | c. mentally and physically | d. spiritually |
|---------------|-------------|----------------------------|----------------|

9. You should do meditation every.....

- | | | | |
|---------|----------|---------|--------|
| a. year | b. month | c. week | d. day |
|---------|----------|---------|--------|

10. We do meditation using our.....

- | | | | |
|----------|-----------|-----------|---------|
| a. lungs | b. brains | c. hearts | d. eyes |
|----------|-----------|-----------|---------|

4) Finish the following dialogue:

Asmaa : Hi Ola. I haven't seen you for a week. (1)

Ola : (2)

Asmaa : To Madrid! Wow! (3)

Ola : I went there on a vacation.

Asmaa : (4)

Teacher : With my family.

Asmaa : How did you go there?

Ola : (5)because my brother is a little bit afraid of flying.

Asmaa : I think you enjoyed your time there.

Ola : (6)Madrid is a charming city.

5) Write a paragraph of (120) words about ONE (1) only of the following:

- a) A famous Egyptian writer you admire his style in writing.
b) The famous Egyptian football superstar Mohammad Salah.

Translation

6) a) Translate into Arabic :

1- His first short story, published in 1925, established him as one of the great short story writers of the Arab World.

2- Many of Yehia Haqqi's novels like *The Postman* and *Qandeel umm Hashim* were made into films with the same name.

b) Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English :

١- لكل شعب عاداته وتقاليده الخاصة والتي تبدو غريبة للشعوب الاخرى .

٢- لقد كان يحيى حقى واحداً من رواد الادب المصرى الحديث .

شكراً للذين خذلونا
فقد ضاعفوا
شعورنا
بأن الله
أماننا الوحيد

حب الله هو الحب الوحيد
الذي اذا غرقت فيه نجوت

قول يارب من قلبك
وشيل الحزن من جوك
قول يارب محتجلك
و هو مستحيل ينساك
قول يارب
وهيبعد عنك كل حاجه تعبأك

Unit 2

Abdel-Tawab Youssef
My father, An Egyptian Teacher



LISTENING

- Interviewer** : Many people have grown up reading the books of Abdel-Tawab Youssef. In Fact, I have just finished one of his books, called MY FATHER, AN EGYPTIAN TEACHER. With me today is Mrs Abdelaziz. She has written a book about why the writer became successful. So, Mrs Abdelaziz, Was Youssef from Cairo?
- Mrs Abdelaziz** : No, he wasn't, although he lived all his life there. He was born in 1928 in a small village near Beni Suef. When he was a child, he loved to read children's books and also loved writing.
- Interviewer** : **Did he go to university?**
- Mrs Abdelaziz** : Yes, in 1945 he started studying political science at Cairo University. He graduated in 1950 and then worked for the Egyptian Ministry of Education but six months later, his father died.
- Interviewer** : **That must have been a difficult time for him.**
- Mrs Abdelaziz** : That's right. He wanted to live in Cairo with his mother and his three younger sisters. His uncles didn't think that was a good idea, but he wanted to earn enough money to send his sisters to school, which was unusual at that time.
- Interviewer** : **When did he start writing children's books?**
- Mrs Abdelaziz** : He didn't start for many years. He married Noaila Rashed in 1956 and they had three children. He set up the Children's Culture Association in 1968 and he travelled to many countries to study children's culture, but he didn't start writing until 1975.
- Interviewer** : **What happened then?**
- Mrs Abdelaziz** : Well, in 1957, he started writing children's stories for radio and television. The stories were very successful and so he started to write novels, poems and plays, often about important events and people in the world. He won many awards for his writing.
- Interviewer** : **Are his books only famous in Egypt?**
- Mrs Abdelaziz** : No. Since he became famous in Egypt, people have translated his books into many languages, including English, French and Chinese. He travelled a lot too. In 1985 , he lectured at the University of Ohio in the United States about writing for children and the importance of Arabic literature. He died in 2015, aged 87.
- Interviewer** : **His books have influenced children for many years, and I am sure children will continue to enjoy his books in the future. Thank you!**

Reading

My Father, An Egyptian Teacher

For all those who have had the honour of being called "Teacher".

The head teacher realized that the young teacher was worried about his first lesson at the school.

"**Don't** worry, you have all the qualities to be a good teacher," he said. " You are very *natural* with the students. You are *serious* and *responsible* but *strict*. That is what I have learnt about you in the short time you have been here. You will need to *discipline* the students, but you will be *fatherly* and *gentle*."

"**Do** you think so, I have always prepared my lessons well," said the teacher. "I give myself goals and plan how to achieve them. I plan an introduction and then use steps. And I like to use paintings and pictures," said the teacher. "That is good. You have come with fresh ideas," answered the head.

"I believe that a teacher mustn't *silence* his students. He must *inspire* them and *encourage* them to communicate and to *take part in* conversations."

"You don't want to *spoil* the students," warned the head.

"Oh, I won't, we should encourage them to move around the class. We can change the design of the classroom: if there's a discussion, the students can sit in a circle or *semicircle*. We could even have the class outside, under the trees!" said the teacher.

"Good luck with your first class tomorrow," said the head.

The head teacher left him dreaming about his new life as a teacher. He believed that *his* was the most important job: he was society's engineer, helping to build it. A teacher is like the *layers* of the earth: whatever level you reach, you can dig deeper to find more layers that are even richer than before. *His* was the best job in the world.

VOCABULARY

association (n.)	جمعية	translate (v.)	يترجم
associate (v.)	يربط/يوصل	translator (n.)	مترجم
culture (n.)	ثقافة	translation (n.)	ترجمة
cultural (adj.)	ثقافى	include (v.)	يشمل/يتضمن
cultivate (v.)	يثقف/يغرس	inclusion (n.)	اشمال/تضمين
ministry (n.)	وزارة	including (prep.)	بما فيه
ministral (adj.)	وزارى	too (adv.)	ايضا
minister (n.)	وزير	lecture (n.\v.)	محاضرة/ يحاضر
prime minister (n.)	رئيس وزراء	literature (n.)	ادب
political science (n.)	علم سياسى	literacy (n.)	قراءة
success (n.)	نجاح	illiteracy (n.)	امية
succeed (v.)	ينجح	influence (n.\v.)	تاثير / يؤثر
successful (adj.)	ناجح	influencial (adj.)	ذو تاثير / ذو نفوذ
successfully (adv.)	بنجاح	continue (v.)	يستمر
village (n.)	قرية	importance (n.)	اهمية
university (n.)	جامعة	important (adj.)	مهم
graduate (v.)	يتخرج	called (v.)	يدعى/ يسمى
graduation (n.)	تخرج	passport (n.)	جواز سفر
education (n.)	تعليم	contact (v.)	يتواصل
educational (adj.)	تعليمى	connect (v.)	يوصل
educate (v.)	يعلم	child (n.)	طفل
educated (adj.)	متعلم/ مثقف	children (n.)	اطفال
later (adv.)	فيما بعد	childhood (n.)	طفولة
usual (adj.)	معتاد	childish (adj.)	طفولى
usually (adv.)	عادة	abroad (adv.)	خارج البلاد
novels (n.)	روايات	dentist (n.)	طبيب اسنان
poems (n.)	قصائد	dentist's (n.)	عيادة طبيب اسنان
plays (n.)	مسرحيات	recommend (v.)	يوصى/ يرشح
events (n.)	احداث	busy (adj.)	مشغول
awards (n.)	جوائز	charity (n.)	خير/ بر/ احسان
famous (adj.)	مشهور	weekend (n.)	عطلة نهاية الاسبوع
fame (n.)	شهرة	the most (adv.)	الاكثر
materials (n.)	خامات/ مواد	the least (adv.)	الاقل

discipline (n.\v.)	ضبط / يضبط	father (n.)	اب
layer (n.)	طبقة	fatherly (adj.)	ابوى
responsible (adj.)	مسئول	fatherhood (n.)	ابوة
responsibility (n.)	مسئولية	motherhood (n.)	امومة
irresponsibility (n.)	عدم اكتراث	achieve (v.)	ينجز
semicircle (n.)	نصف دائرة	achievement (n.)	انجاز
semifinal (n.)	نصف نهائى	plan (n.\v.)	خطة / يخطط
serious (adj.)	جاد / خطير	planner (n.)	مخطط
seriously (adv.)	بجدية	introduce (v.)	يقدم
seriousness (n.)	جدية	introduction (n.)	مقدمة
silence (n.\v..)	صمت / يسكت	steps (n.)	خطوات
silent (adj.)	صامت / ساكن	paintings (n.)	رسومات
spoil (v.)	يفسد	inspire (v.)	يلهم
strict (adj.)	حازم	inspired (adj.)	ملهم
strictly (adv.)	بحزم	inspiration (n.)	الهام
strictness (n.)	حزم	encourage (v.)	يشجع
the earth (n.)	الكرة الارضية	encouragement (n.)	تشجيع
honour (n.\v.)	شرف / يشرف	encouraging (adj.)	مشجع
head teacher (n.)	مدرس اول	discourage (v.)	يثبط
realize (v.)	يدرك	discouragement (n.)	تشبیط
qualities (n.)	سمات	warn (n.)	يحذر
quantities (n.)	كميات	conversation (n.)	محادثة
nature (n.)	طبيعة	communicate (v.)	يتواصل
natural (adj.)	طبيعى	communication (n.)	تواصل
naturally (adv.)	طبيعيا	discuss (v.)	يناقش
warm (adj.)	دافىء	discussion (n.)	نقاش
gentle (adj.)	لطيف	like (n.)	مثل
whatever (adj.)	مهما	pay (n.\v.)	اجر / يدفع
whenever (adj.)	حينما	ache (n.\v.)	الم / يؤلم
wherever (adj.)	اينما	demand (n.\v.)	طلب / يطلب
level (n.)	مستوى	face (n.\v.)	وجه / يواجه
useful (adj.)	مفيد	break (n.\v.)	فسحة / يكسر
worthwhile (adj.)	جدير بالاهتمام	chat (n.\v.)	دردشة / يدرش
among (prep.)	بين (اكثر من اثنين)	intelligent (adj.)	ذكى
between (prep.)	بين	sensible (adj.)	عاقل
difference (n.)	اختلاف	sensitive (adj.)	حساس
different (adj.)	مختلف	trusted (adj.)	موثوق به
differently (adv.)	بطريقة مختلفة	quiet (adj.)	هادىء
differ (v.)	يختلف	confident (adj.)	واثق
differentiate (v.)	يفرق	confidence (n.)	ثقة
wet (adj.)	مبلل	archaeology (n.)	علم الآثار
recent (adj.)	حديث	archaeologist (n.)	عالم اثار
recently (adv.)	مؤخرا	anywhere (adv.)	اى مكان
vet (n.)	طبيب بيطرى	websites (n.)	مواقع الكترونية

Prepositions حروف جر

grow up	يكبر / يتربى	good luck with	حظ سعيد بـ
set up	يقيم / يعد	the rest of	بقية الـ
famous for	مشهور بـ	by the pool	بجوار البحيرة
famous in	مشهور فى	a long way from	طريق طويل من
send to	يرسل لـ	look forward to	يشتاق / يتطلع لـ
go out	يخرج / تنطفئ	hear from	يتلقى اخبار عن
responsible for	مسئول عن	hear of	يسمع عن
the honour of	شرف الـ	focus on	يركز على
worried about	قلق بخصوص	expert on	خبير فى
natural with	طبيعى مع	on top of	على قمة....
learn about	يعرف / يتعلم عن	dream about	يحلم بـ
take part in	يشارك فى	move around	يتجول
associated with	مرتبط بـ	concerned with	مهتم بـ
in shape of....	فى شكل	difficult for	صعب لـ

Expressions تعبيرات

children's books	كتب الاطفال	make a job worthwhile	يجعل العمل يستحق
political science	علم سياسى	conduct a survey	يدير استبيان
earn money	يربح مالا	football team	فريق كرة قدم
win awards	يفوز بجوائز	lose forms	يفقد اشكالا
health problems	مشاكل صحية	have a shower	ياخذ دشا
polluted city	مدينة ملوثة	a week-old moon	قمر عمره اسبوع
ride a camel	يركب جملا	obey rules	يطيع القوانين
receive a reply	يتلقى رد	Children's Culture Association	جمعية ثقافة الاطفال
discipline students	يضبط الطلاب	a concerned father	اب مهتم
prepare lessons	يعد دروس	each other	بعضهم البعض
give yourself goals	اعط لنفسك اهداف	make sure	يتأكد
achieve your goals	حقق اهدافك	behave badly	يتصرف بسوء
reach your goals	صل لاهدافك	keep fit	يحافظ على لياقته
change the design	يغير التصميم	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
sit in a circle	يجلس فى دائرة	collect coins	يجمع عملات
society's engineer	مهندس المجتمع	do a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع
reach a level	يصل لمستوى	make a plan	يقوم بعمل خطة
dig deeper	يجفر اعماق	show respect	يظهر الاحترام
give advice	يعطى نصائح		

الحقيقة المُوَجَّعة..
أفضل ألف مرة من الوهم الجميل.

تجاهل كل ما يُقال من خلفك،
يكفى بالحد ذاته أنهم أمامك
صامِتون



تعريفات Definitions

- 1 - association** (مساعد / زميل - associate - يربط — associate with) جمعية
- an organization of people with the same interests, or who do the same kind of work.
- 2 - cultural** (يتقن - cultivate - ثقافة culture) ثقافى
- relating to art, music, literature...etc.
- 3 - ministry** (وزير - minister - وزارى - ministrat) وزارة
- a government department.
- 4 - political science** علم سياسى
- the study of the ideas and activities that are concerned with how a country is governed.
- 5 - lecture** يلقي محاضرة
- talk to a group of people about a subject.
- 6 - importance** (باهية - importantly - مهم - important) اهمية
- the quality of being important.
- 7 - influence** (ذو تأثير او نفوذ - influential) يؤثر / تأثير
- to have an effect on the way someone or something develops or behaves.
- 8 - discipline** (ضبط النفس - self-discipline - فرع من المعرفة - discipline) تهذيب / تاديب - يضبط / يؤدب
- to teach someone to obey rules and control their own behavior.
- 9 - honour** (شريف / مكرم - honourable - يشرف / يكرم - honour) شرف / تكريم
- something that makes you feel proud and happy..
- 10 - layer** طبقة
- one of several levels of different materials that are on top of each other.
- 11 - responsible** (غير مسئول - irresponsible - مسئولية - responsibility) مسئول
- sensible and be able to be trusted.
- 12 - semicircle** نصف دائرة
- a group arranged in a curved line.
- 13 - serious** (جدية - seriousness - بجدية - seriously) جاد
- someone who is quiet and does not often laugh.
- 14 - silence** (صامت / ساكن - silent - صمت / سكون - silence) يسكت
- to make someone stop giving their opinions.
- 15 - spoil** (تلف / فساد / غنيمة - spoil) يفسد / يدلل
- to let a child do whatever they want, with the result that they behave badly.
- 16 - strict** (قسوة / شدة / صرامة - strictness - بصرامة / بقسوة - strictly) صارم
- making sure that people always obey rules.
- 17 - fatherly** (ابوة - fatherhood) ابوى
- typical of a kind or concerned father.
- 18 - plan** يخطط
- think about something you want to do, and how you will do it.



- ▶ **award** جائزة / يمنح جائزة
 ▶ **reward** مكافأة / يكافئ
Ex: He was awarded Noble Prize for literature.
Ex: My father rewarded me for my success.

- ▶ **aboard** على متن / ظهر السفينة / الطائرة / القطار
 ▶ **abroad** خارج البلاد
Ex: The flight attendant welcomed us aboard.
Ex: He decided to travel abroad to earn his living.

- ▶ **later** فيما بعد
 ▶ **latter** اللاحق
Ex: She loved him much, later she discovered his lies.
Ex: The latter point is the most important.

- ▶ **encourage** + Obj. + to + Inf. يشجع أن
 ▶ **discourage** + Obj. + from + V-ing يثبط أن
Ex: A good teacher must encourage his students to take part in conversations.
Ex: His parents tried to discourage him from being an actor.

- ▶ **aged** (adj.) = **of the age of** عن عمر
 ▶ **ageing** (n) شيخوخة
Ex: My grandfather died aged 74.
Ex: Women are always worried about ageing\ aging.



Asking for and giving advice طلب وإعطاء النصيحة

➤ Asking for advice:

- What is your advice.....?
- What do you think that I should?
- Can I ask your advice.....?
- Could you give me some advice.....?
- What should I do to.....?
- What do you advise me to do to.....?
- How would you suggest that we.....?

➤ Giving advice

- I don't think that you should.....
- I think that you should,.....
- I'd think twice about.....
- If I were you, I'd.....
- If you want my honest opinion.....

Grammar

- The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Formation:

S. + have / has + P.P

Usage:

- هو الزمن الوحيد الذى يربط الماضى بالحاضر إذ يستخدم لـ:

١. يعبر عن حدث تم وانتهى في الماضي ولكن آثاره مازالت موجودة في الحاضر .

Ex: I have lost my keys. I can't open the door.

٢. يعبر عن حدث بدأ في الماضي ومازال مستمرا في الحاضر .

Ex: I have lived in Cairo since 1992. (I am still living there)

٣. يعبر عن حدث لم يحدث ولكن ما زال احتمال حدوثه قائم .

Ex: I haven't visited Luxor yet.

Ex: She hasn't done her homework yet.

Ex: I have never been to the U.S.A.

٤. يعبر عن حدث تم منذ وقت قصير في الماضي .

(just – already – lately)

Ex: He has just arrived.

Ex: They have already had their dinner.

الكلمات والعبارات الدالة عليه:

1- just في التو/ حالا

- تأتي بين الفعل المساعد والتصريف الثالث.

Ex: I have just finished reading the book.

2- already بالفعل

- تأتي بين الفعل المساعد والتصريف الثالث ويمكن ان تأتي فى اخر الجملة.

Ex: She has already ironed the shirts.

3- yet بعد/ حتى الان

- تأتي في نهاية الجملة المنفية وفي نهاية السؤال .

Ex: Have you brought your books yet?

Ex: I haven't met him yet.

4- ever سبق/ من قبل

- تأتي في السؤال بين الفاعل والتصريف الثالث

Ex: Have you ever been to Luxor?

- وتستخدم ايضا اذا سبقت بصيغة تفضيل.

Ex: Haifaa is the most beautiful actress I have ever seen.

- وتستخدم ايضا اذا بدأت الجملة بـ Nobody, No one .

Ex: Nobody has ever beaten me in chess.

5- never ابدا

- تأتي في الجملة المنفية بين الفعل المساعد والتصريف الثالث

Ex: I have never been to Luxor.

- وتستخدم **never** اذا وجد باخر الجملة كلمة **before** فى اخر الجملة.

Ex: I have never eaten snakes before.

6- since منذ

S. + have\has + P.P..... since	S. + past simple
	2010, 2015.....
	Monday, Friday,.....
	April, March,.....
	o'clock.
	lunchtime\ childhood,.....
	last.....
	yesterday
	then.

Ex: I haven't seen her since she left school.

Ex: I have lived here since 2000.

Ex: I haven't seen Mai since Monday.

Ex: I haven't eaten anything since 6 o'clock.

Ex: The weather has been quite good since Christmas.

Ex: I haven't had a good meal since last Tuesday.

- وتستخدم **since** مع التعبير الاتى:

It's + a period of time + since + S. + Past simple

Ex: It's a long time since I went to the cinema.

7- for لمدة

S. + have\has + P.P..... for	(number) years, months, days, hours, weeks, minutes
	a long time
	ages, centuries, decades
	as long as.....
	fortnight.
	the last.....

Ex: Mona hasn't been to Rome for ages.

Ex: We have lived here for three years now.

Ex: I have stayed in this hotel for fortnight.

Ex: I haven't heard from him for the last two weeks.

Ex: I have been here for an hour.

Ex: We have known each other for a long time.

8- lately مؤخرًا

- تأتي في نهاية الجملة المنفية .

Ex: I haven't seen him lately.

9- recently مؤخرًا / حديثًا

- تأتي في نهاية الجملة المثبتة ونهاية السؤال.

Ex: I have met him many times recently.

10- so far\ up till now حتى الآن

- تأتي في نهاية او بداية الجملة المثبتة.

Ex: So far, I have written three e-mails.

Ex: We haven't had any problems so far.

11- It's the first\second\third.....time + S. + have\has + P.P

انها لأول / ثانى / ثالثمرة.....

Ex: It's the first time I have driven a car.

Ex: That's the third time I have phoned him this evening.

12- S. + have\ has + P.P.....today\ this year\ this evening....

Ex: I have drunk four cups of tea today.

Ex: Israa hasn't worked hard this term\year.

13- S. + have\ has + P.P.....in the las few years\days....

Ex: I've met a lot of people in the last few days.

Ex: There has been significant developments in the last 50 years.

14- S. + have\ has + P.P.....over the years\ages\ centuries.

Ex: He has changed a lot over the years.

Notes:

١. عندما تأتي جملة واحدة مع since تكون في زمن المضارع التام:

Ex: I haven't met Ali since last Monday.

٢. عندما تأتي جملتين مع since تأتي بعدها جملة في الماضي البسيط.

Ex: I haven't eaten frog legs since I left France.

٣. لاحظ الفرق بين:

S. + have \ has been to ذهب الى مكان وعاد منه

S. + have \ has gone to..... ذهب الى مكان وما زال هناك

Ex: He has been to France. He is in Cairo now.

Ex: He has gone to France. He is still there.

Homework

1) Choose the correct answer

1. Mr Youssef set up a/an.....to help children in 1968.
a. association b. assassination c. communication d. appreciation
2. Ali's grandfather was a doctor and later worked for the.....of health.
a. government b. ministry c. amnesty d. anxiety
3. The teacher told us about the.....of revising before exam.
a. importance b. important c. import d. interest
4. The tourists went on a/an.....tour of Egypt, visiting all the ancient sites.
a. economical b. industrial c. agricultural d. cultural
5. My history teacher.....my decision to become a teacher ,too.
a. inspired b. improved c. influenced d. imported
6. Mona's uncle is an expert on science and often.....at university.
a. features b. pictures c. tortures d. lectures
7. Shakespeare's plays have been very.....: many writers have used his stories.
a. influenza b. financial c. influencial d. facial
8. The football team are playing with a lot of.....I think they are going to win.
a. difference b. carelessness c. confidence d. importance
9. Don't lose those forms. They are very.....
a. importance b. important c. port d. import
10. What is the.....in meaning between *where* and *wear*?
a. differ b. different c. difference d. differentiate
11. You need a lot of.....to be good at chess.
a. intelligence b. difference c. importance d. audience
12. A week-old moon is in shape of.....
a. semifinal b. semicolon c. semicircle d. semi
13. To.....someone means to make someone stop giving their opinions.
a. silence b. slice c. license d. confidence
14. To.....means to make people obey rules and orders.
a. system b. discipline c. design d. drawline
15. To.....means to let a child do whatever they want, with the result that they behave badly.
a. spill b. spoil c. snork d. spilt
17.is the behavior that is typical of a kind or concerned father.
a. Motherly b. Fatherly c. Fatherhood d. Featherly
18. A\An.....is one of several levels of different materials that are on top of each other.
a. layer b. lower c. liar d. lawyer
19. Someone who is sensible and can be trusted is.....
a. response b. responsible c. irresponsible d. careless
20. A.....person is someone who is quiet and often laughs.
a. funny b. naughty c. serious d. humourus

21. A.....person is someone who makes sure that people always obey rules and does not let people behave badly.
a. strict b. funny c. foolish d. stupid
22. I ran for ten kilometers yesterday and now my legs.....
a. bake b. ache c. pain d. take
23. Phone me after school and we can have a.....about the weekend.
a. shit b. cheat c. sheet d. chat
24. Let's play a game in the.....between lessons.
a. brake b. brick c. break d. track
25. The tourists sat by the pool and.....the sun.
a. faced b. planned c. chatted d. ached
26. The teacher.....to know why the students were all late.
a. broke b. faced c. ached d. demanded
27. We.....to go to Greece for the holidays next year.
a. face b. plan c. break d. eat
28. All teachers work for the ministry of.....
a. culture b. education c. tourism d. environment
29. His stories are famous.....many countries.
a. in b. for c. at d. on
30. Mr. Mahrous has the.....to be a good teacher.
a. quantities b. amounts c. qualities d. sums
31. A good teacher should be able to.....the students.
a. discipline b. spoil c. punish d. kill
32. You should give yourself.....and plan how to achieve them.
a. bullets b. numbers c. goals d. balls
33. A good teacher mustn't.....his students. Students must be encouraged.
a. discipline b. plan c. silence d. inspire
34. My head teacher wishes me good luck.....my first lesson tomorrow.
a. to b. about c. with d. of
35. A teacher is like the.....of the earth.
a. lawyers b. layers c. payers d. liars
36. Good students always show.....to their teachers.
a. inspect b. suspect c. respect d. defect
37. Students should always be.....to communicate in class
a. discouraged b. encouraged c. silenced d. spoiled
38. A good teacher should.....a plan for the lesson.
a. do b. make c. invent d. draw
39. A good pay makes a job.....
a. worthless b. worthwhile c. meanwhile d. trivial
40. Yesterday I ate bad food and I had a severe stomach.....
a. ache b. cake c. pain d. shake
41. I always.....with my friends on the internet.
a. chat b. face c. break d. sat

42. I want to keep fit. What.....can you give me?
a. device b. advice c. devise d. advise
43. Abdel-Tawab Youssef studied.....science at Cairo University.
a. political b. literature c. culture d. ministry
44. A good teacher should.....his lessons well.
a. make b. do c. prepare d. invent
45. When I have a problem, I alwaysmy father's advice.
a. ask b. give c. devise d. play
46. Our teacher asked us to.....a survey about the qualities of a good teacher.
a. connect b. detect c. conduct d. invent
47. Many people have grown.....reading the books of Abdel-Tawab Youssef.
a. to b. in c. at d. up
48. In 1945, he started studyingscience at Cairo University.
a. policy b. politician c. political d. politically
49. Abdel-Tawab Youssef set.....the Children's Culture Association in 1968.
a. to b. in c. at d. up
50. Abdel-Tawab Youssef.....many awards for his writings.
a. gained b. won c. earned d. gave
51. People have translated his books into many languages,.....English, French and Chinese
a. enclosing b. including c. concluding d. applauding
52. Abdel-Tawab Youssef died in 2015,.....87.
a. ageing b. aged c. paging d. age
53. Abdel-Tawab Youssef's books have.....children for many years.
a. influenced b. silenced c. lectured d. ignored
54. My father said that his teacher was very.....My father couldn't talk in his lessons.
a. serious b. strict c. fatherly d. kind
55. Nabila.....her grandchildren. She always gives them lots of food and presents.
a. annoys b. hates c. spills d. spoils
56. The school secretary is.....for sending emails to the parents.
a. irresponsible b. respected c. responsible d. awarded
57. This film is very..... I'd prefer to watch something that will make us laugh!
a. sensible b. funny c. serious d. fun
58. Many people have grown up.....the books of Abdel-Tawab Youssef.
a. to read b. reading c. read d. to reading
59. When he was a child, he loved to read.....books.
a. children b. children's c. childhood d. child
60. he became famous in Egypt, people have translated his books.
a. For b. Since c. Yet d. Already
61. They.....in Luxor since 2015.
a. lived b. have lived c. had lived d. were living
62. I can't phone my parents because I my phone.
a. had lost b. was lost c. have lost d. will lose
63. It's two weeks.....we last met.
a. for b. just c. when d. since
64. This is the most interesting book I have.....read.
a. ever b. never c. just d. since

65. Oh! Imy passport. What should I do?
a. was losing b. lost c. have lost d. had lost
66. Adel hasn't contacted me since he.....Cairo.
a. left b. has left c. had left d. was left
67. I have never.....to the zoo before.
a. gone b. been c. went d. going
68. My cousin has lived abroadhis childhood.
a. for b. so far c. since d. just
69. Belal is not here. He.....to the dentist's.
a. has gone b. has been c. had been d. had gone
70. Nothing like this has.....happened to me.
a. never b. since c. yet d. ever
71. We haven't travelled by train.....years.
a. recently b. already c. since d. for
72. Ahmed.....his leg, so he can't play football today.
a. hurt b. hurts c. has hurt d. had hurt
73. Leila isn't here. She has.....gone out.
a. ever b. never c. for d. just
74. You can't talk to Tarek because he.....out.
a. used to go b. had gone c. has just gone d. goes
75. Ola is nervous because she.....a talk to the class before.
a. never gives b. had never given c. never used to give d. has never given
76. I haven't seen the new adventure film.....
a. just b. yet c. already d. never
77. Ahmed.....London. He is going to return to Cairo next week.
a. has gone b. has been c. has gone to d. has been to
78. Karim has been really good at English.....he went to England on holiday last summer.
a. when b. for c. although d. since
79. All the cakes in that shop.....by my aunt. She works there.
a. made b. were making c. have been made d. have
80. Our house.....decorated yet.
a. hasn't been b. hasn't c. hadn't been d. won't have
81. Jane is on holiday. He.....to Italy.
a. has been b. had been c. has gone d. had gone
82. Tom.....out. He'll be back in about an hour.
a. has gone b. has been c. had gone d. had been
83. "Are you going to the bank?" "No, I've already.....to the bank."
a. been b. went c. going d. gone
84. It's the first time he.....a car.
a. drives b. drove c. has driven d. had driven
85. We have been friends.....ages.
a. since b. still c. already d. for
86. She has lived in London.....the last few years.
a. since b. still c. already d. for
87. How long is it.....you last saw Haneen?
a. for b. since c. when d. already

88. Ia lot of people in the last few days.
a. have met b. met c. had met d. am meeting
89. I'm hungry. I haven't eaten anything.....breakfast.
a. lately b. recently c. for d. since
90. Christmas, the weather has been quite good.
a. Lately b. Yet c. For d. Since
91. There.....growth in population in Egypt in the last ten years.
a. is b. was c. has been d. will be
92. The last time I saw her.....we were in Paris.
a. for b. since c. when d. ever
93. I have written stories.....as long as I can remember.
a. for b. since c. when d. ever
94. They.....each other for a long time.
a. know b. are knowing c. have known d. had known
95. Walaa.....her key. She can't get into the house.
a. lost b. has lost c. is losing d. loses
96. Hassan.....a lot of work today.
a. has done b. had done c. was doing d. did
97. I golf when I was on holiday last summer.
a. am not playing b. don't play c. haven't played d. didn't play
98. The Chinese.....printing.
a. have invented b. invented c. had invented d. invent
99. It.....ages since we visited her old friends.
a. does b. has been c. was d. will be
100. The last time ISahar was two years ago.
a. have seen b. saw c. had seen d. see

2) Read the following passage , then answer the questions:

Why do so many people feel the need to make fun of and judge others? This question crosses my mind daily. I wonder why we, as humans, feel the need to judge and *degrade* others. It's human nature to compare ourselves to others, whether it's to our family members, peers or even celebrities we see in the media. We base our judgments of ourselves and others on these comparisons. Judging others sometimes gives people a sense of prestige because demeaning others can create a false sense of security and identity. No two people are completely alike. We need to accept these differences and stop judging people. It is hurtful to them and makes the people ridiculing them look bad. In fact, I find myself judging others more often than not. I think it's unfair for me to draw conclusions and opinions about others without knowing them. I hear people say things about others all the time without consequences and this encourages them to continue getting their laughs through other peoples' pain. It's hard to listen to, but it can be stopped. As young adults, it's our duty to make a conscience effort to be more accepting towards others' differences, especially at college.

1. According to the passage, people are.....
a. alike b. different c. the same d. twins
2. The underlined word ' them ' refers to.....
a. those who laugh at people b. those who are being laughed
c. those who go to college d. those who ridicule people
3. The writer wants us to be.....
a. tolerant b. aggressive c. greedy d. critics
4. The word *degrade* means.....
a. to lower in dignity b. to give prestige c. to give position d. to honour

5. Judging others makes the one who judges feels.....

- a. weak b. powerful c. miserable d. sad

6. At schools, students compare themselves to their.....

- a. peers b. families c. celebrities d. teachers

7. Give a suitable title to the passage.

8. What are our judgement of ourselves and the others based on?

9. What makes people continue laughing at others?

10. Where should young adults accept the other's differences?

4) Finish the following dialogue:

Amal : 1).....?

Maysa : I was reading a novel at six o'clock yesterday evening.

Amal : What do you think of modern novels?

Maysa : 2).....

Amal : I agree, I think classic stories are better too. What do you think of short stories?

Maysa : 3).....

Amal : I don't agree. I think they can be as exciting as longer novels.

Maysa : 4).....?

Amal : Charles Dickens.

Maysa : What did you read for him?

Amal : 5).....

Maysa : 6).....?

Amal : It was about a young boy called Oliver Twist who lived a hard and miserable childhood

5) Write a paragraph of 120 words about ONE (1) only of the following:

- a) The qualities of a good teacher.
b) Your ideal teacher.

Translation

6) a) Translate into Arabic :

1- A good teacher must inspire his students and encourage them to communicate and to take part in conversations.

2- Students must show respect to their teachers as they work hard to help them to have a successful future.

b) Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English :

١- لقد اشرت كتب عبدالنواب يوسف فى الاطفال لعدة سنين.

٢- قم للمعلم وفه التبجيلا، كاد المعلم ان يكون رسولا.

Unit 3

The Future of Books

Listening



Kasim : Hi, Ziad.

Ziad : Hi, Kasim.

Kasim : What are you looking at?

Ziad : It's an e-book reader. I'm going to read an e-book on it. It's a novel by William Golding.

Kasim : What are e-books?

Ziad : They're electronic books. I read one last week. Now I'm really enthusiastic about the idea of using them to read all my books.

Kasim : How do you read them?

Ziad : Well, you download the them from the internet onto an e-book reader, like this one. As you can see, it is a small computer about the same size as a paperback. It has a screen like the page of a book. So you read the book on the screen and turn the pages by pressing buttons or by touching the screen.

Kasim : But surely you can't download all kinds of books?

Ziad : You can download many kinds of books, but in the future, they'll probably publish every new book as an ordinary book and as an e-book.

Kasim : That sounds amazing, but if you have to pay for the reader and the download, that must be expensive.

Ziad : At the moment e-book readers are quite expensive, but I'm sure the publishers will reduce the price when more people buy them. New gadgets are always expensive when only a few people are buying them.

Kasim : Do you think publishers will ever replace traditional books completely?

Ziad : No, I don't think so. But when more books are available online, I think we'll read most bestsellers as e-books. On the other hand, I'm sure publishers won't replace some kinds of books.

Kasim : Yes, books that are large or where pictures are important.

Ziad : E-books are good for the environment, too.

Kasim : Are they?

Ziad : Yes, think of all the paper that we can save.

Kasim : It's a great idea.

Ziad : This is my cousin's e-book reader, but I really like it, so my father is buying me one for my next birthday.

Kasim : There's a programme about the future of books on TV. The programme starts at seven o'clock tomorrow evening. I think I'll watch that programme. Will you watch it with me?

Ziad : I'd like to, but I can't. I'll be reading tomorrow evening. I want to finish the book by William Golding.

Kasim : You've read a lot of his books, haven't you?

Ziad : Yes. After I finish this book, I'll have read all of his novels.

Reading

The history of paper

✂ In Ancient Egypt, people used a type of tall grass called **papyrus**. It grew in the Nile Valley, and people used it for writing and drawing on. Before people could use it, they **soaked** the leaves of the grass in water, **pressed** them together and then dried in the sun.

✂ The Chinese **made** the first **paper** two thousand years ago. In the **eighth** century, Arab travellers who **traded** with China learned how to make it, too. At first, paper was very expensive because it was **made from** cotton, but later it was made from wood and so it became much cheaper.

✂ To make paper, people broke the wood into small pieces which they mixed with chemicals and **bleached**. They then **removed** water from the **mixture**. The mixture passes through hot **rollers** to produce continuous pieces of dry paper.

- ✂ Every year, We cut down millions of trees to make new paper. Fortunately, the type of tree that gives us the best wood for making paper grows very quickly, but you can also **recycle** old paper. We make most of today's newspapers and magazines from **recycled paper**.
- ✂ For hundreds of years, we have also used an enormous amount of paper to produce books, **especially** very large books like **encyclopedias**. Now, you can read encyclopedias and other books on **e-books**. You can also read books **online**, on websites such as **the Egyptian Knowledge Bank (EKB)**.
- ✂ Some people think that soon everybody will have a computer or a phone and we will get all our information from the internet.. They believe that we won't need libraries and that paper books will become **part of history**.

VOCABULARY

available (adj.)	متوافر / متاح	autumn (n.)	خريف
availability (n.)	توافر / اتاحة	prediction (n.)	تنبؤ
button (n.\v.)	زر / يزرر	predict (v.)	يتنبأ
compare (v.)	يقارن	decision (n.)	قرار
comparision (n.)	مقارنة	decide (v.)	يقرر
enthuse (v.)	يحمس	intention (n.)	نية
enthusiastic (adj.)	متحمس	intend (v.)	ينوى
enthusiast (n.)	شخص حماسى	plan (n.\v.)	خطة / يخطط
enthusiastically (adv.)	بحماس	bleach (n.\v.)	سائل تبييض / يبيض
enthusiasm (n.)	حماس	encyclopedia (n.)	موسوعة
gadget (n.)	أداة	encyclopedic (adj.)	موسوعى
paperback (n.)	كتاب الجيب	mixture (n.)	خليط / مزيج
reduce (v.)	يقلل	mix (v.)	يخلط / يمزج
reduction (n.)	تقليل	press (v.)	يضغط
replace (v.)	يستبدل	The press (n.)	الصحافة
replacement (n.)	استبدال	pressing (adj.)	ضاغط
publish (v.)	ينشر (كتاب)	pressure (n.)	ضغط
publisher (n.)	ناشر	remove (v.)	يزيل
publication (n.)	نشر	removal (n.)	ازالة
online (adj.)	موصل بالنت	roll (v.)	يلف
offline (adj.)	غير موصل بالنت	roller (n.)	بكرة دوارة
download (v.)	يحمل من عالنت	rolling (n.)	لف
upload (v.)	يرفع على النت	soak (v.)	ينقع
touch (v.)	يلمس	trade (n.\v.)	تجارة / يتاجر
screen (n.)	شاشة	trader (n.)	تاجر
electronic (adj.)	الكترونى	paper (n.)	ورق (لاتعد)
electroniacally (adv.)	الكترونيا	papyrus (n.)	ورق بردى
ebook (n.)	كتاب الكترونى	dry (adj.\v.)	جاف / يجفف
email (n.)	بريد الكترونى	wet (adj.)	مبلل
library (n.)	مكتبة	grass (n.)	عشب
traditional (adj.)	تقليدى	grow (v.)	ينمو / يزرع
up-to-date (adj.)	حديث	almost (adv.)	تقريبا

update (v.)	يحدث (بيانات)	together (adv.)	سويا
price (n.)	سعر	China (n.)	الصين
disappear (v.)	يختفى	The Chinese (n.)	الصينيون
completely (adv.)	تماما	expensive (adj.)	غالى
research (n.)	بحث	cheap (adj.)	رخيص
volcanoes (n.)	براكين	cotton (n.)	قطن
website (n.)	موقع الكترونى	wood (n.)	خشب
The pyramids (n.)	الاهرامات	meeting (n.)	اجتماع
birthday (n.)	يوم ميلاد	chemicals (n.)	مواد كيميائية
novels (n.)	روايات	continous (adj.)	مستمر
medicine (n.)	طب/ دواء	pieces (n.)	قطع
fortunately (adv.)	لحسن الحظ	mark (n.\v.)	علامة/ يصحح
unfortunately (adv.)	لسوء الحظ	book (n.\v.)	كتاب/ يحجز
recycle (v.)	يعيد تصنيع	leaves (n.\v.)	اوراق/ يغادر
recycling (n.)	اعادة تصنيع (تدوير)	type (n.\v.)	نوع/ يكتب بلوحة مفاتيح
recyclable (adj.)	قابل للتصنيع	source (n.)	مصدر
recycled (adj.)	معاد تصنيعة	resource (n.)	مورد
enormous (adj.)	ضخم	news (n.)	خبر/ اخبار
amount (n.)	كمية	crocodiles (n.)	تماسيح
produce (v.)	ينتج	prove (v.)	يثبت
production (n.)	انتاج	proof (n.)	دليل/ برهان
especially (adv.)	خصوصا	confirm (v.)	يؤكد
educate (v.)	يعلم	real (adj.)	حقيقى
education (n.)	تعليم	true (adj.)	صحيح
enjoyment (n.)	متعة	false (adj.)	مزيف
enjoy (v.)	يستمتع	unusual (adj.)	غير عادى
enjoyable (adj.)	ممتع	challenge (n.\v)	تحدى
beans (n.)	فول	term (n.)	فصل دراسى
fact (n.)	حقيقة	a lie (n.)	اكذوبة/ كذبه
fiction (n.)	خيال	clouds (n.)	سحب/ غيوم
fictional (adj.)	خيالى	whenever (adv.)	حينما
platform (n.)	رصيف قطار	manager (n.)	مدير
pavement (n.)	رصيف مشاة	quantities (n.)	كميات
experts (n.)	خبراء	goods (n.)	بضائع (جمع دائما)
sandstorm (n.)	عاصفة رملية	liquid (n.)	سائل

Prepositions حروف جر

good for	مفيد لـ	on websites	على مواقع الكترونية
enthusiastic about	متحمس بخصوص	on TV	فى التلفاز
make....from	يصنع من (مادة متحولة)	on the internet	على الانترنت
find....for	يجد.....لـ	download from....onto	يحمل من.....على.....
find out	يعرف/ يكتشف	upload onto	يرفع على.....
replace....with	يستبدل.....بـ	pass through	يمر عبر
in a minute	فى غضون دقيقة	cut down	يقطع

take....out	يخرج	remove....from	يزيل من
take....away	يبعد	trade with	يتاجر مع
advantages of	مميزات.....	get...from	يحصل على.....من
disadvantages of	عيوب.....	mix with	يخلط/ يختلط بـ
dry in	يجفف فى	use....for +V-ing	يستخدم لـ
look at	ينظر الى	use....to+ Inf.	يستخدم لـ
look for	يبحث عن	write....on	يكتب على
look in	يبحث فى	draw....on	يؤسم على
look on	يبحث على النت	a reduction in	تخفيض فى
look after	يعتنى بـ	complain to	يشكو لـ
source of	مصدر لـ	make up	يؤلف/ يخترع

Expressions تعبيرات

traditional newspaper	جريدة تقليدية	recycled paper	ورق معاد تصنيعة
online newspaper	جريدة على النت	read online	يقرا على النت
traditional book	كتاب تقليدى	everyday life	حياة يومية
electronic book	كتاب الكترونى	real news	خبر حقيقى
ebook reader	قارئ كتب الكترونية	false news	خبر مزيف
turn the pages	يقلب الصفحات	press a button	يضغط زر
school books	كتب مدرسية	dry in the sun	يجفف فى الشمس
along the Nile	بطول/بحزاء النيل	The Egyptian Knowledge Bank	بنك المعرفة المصرى
invent paper	يخترع ورق	enthusiastic students	طلاب متحمسين
make paper	يصنع ورق	a whole library	مكتبة كاملة
Arab travellers	رحالة عرب	show enthusiasm	يظهر حماس
paper books	كتب ورقية	exam results	نتائج امتحان
online books	كتب على الانترنت	a book club meeting	اجتماع نادى الكتاب
Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	a family party	حفلة عائلية
The Nile Valley	وادي النيل	look clean	يبدو نظيفا
look in a library	يبحث فى المكتبة	dry paper	ورق جاف
look on the internet	يبحث على الانترنت		



Questioning sources of information السؤال عن مصادر المعلومات

- Can you prove that?
- What's the source of information for that?
- I can't believe that.
- What proof do they have that this is true?
- It can't be true.
- I think that's true.
- It is not real news, it is false.

Definitions تعريفات

- 1 - available** متوافر / متاح
 - easy to get or buy.
 (نفع/افادة avail - اتاحة او توافر availability - غير متاح / غير متوافر not available)
- 2 - button** زر- يزرر
 - a small part on a machine that you press to make it start or stop.
- 3 - compare** يقارن
 - to examine two or more things in order to find out how they are similar or different.
 (مقارنة comparison - يشبه compare....with - يقارن بـ compare.....to)
 (بعيد عن المقارنة beyond compare - يمكن مقارنة/مقارن comparable)
- 4 - enthusiastic** متحمس
 - showing a lot of interest and excitement about something.
 (بحماس enthusiastically - حماس enthusiasm - شخص حماسى enthusiast - يحمس enthuse)
- 5 - gadget** أداة
 - a small tool or machine that helps you do something.
- 6 - paperback** كتاب الجيب
 - a book with a soft paper cover.
- 7 - reduce** يقلل (يجبر reduce sb\sth to sth\ v-ing - تقليل reduction)
 - to make something become less in size, amount, price, etc.
- 8 - replace** يستبدل (يستبدل...بـ replace.....with - بديل/احلال replacement)
 - to start using a different person or thing instead of the one you use now.
- 9 - bleach** يبيض (يبيض whiten - سائل تبييض bleach)
 - to make something white by using chemicals.
- 10 - encyclopedia** موسوعة (موسوعى encyclopedic)
 - a large book that contains facts.
- 11 - mixture** خليط / مزيج (خلاط mixer - يخلط بـ mix with)
 - something made by mixing two or more things together.
- 12 - press** يضغط (ضغط pressure - ضاغط pressing - الصحافة the press)
 - to push something firmly and steadily.
- 13 - remove** يزيل (يمكن ازالته removable - مزيل remover - إزالة removal)
 - to take something away.
- 14 - roller** بكره دوارة (يلم/يثنى roll up - لف / تدحرج rolling - يلف roll)
 - a round piece of wood or metal that can be rolled.
- 15- soak** ينقع / يبلل (يمتص soak up - منقوع soaked)
 - to cover something with liquid for a period of time.
- 16- trade** تجارة / يتاجر (علامة تجارية trade-mark - تاجر trader)
 - to buy or sell large quantities of goods.



- **amount** كمية من (مال-ماء- وزن)
 ► **quantity** كمية من (شئ يعد او لا يعد)

Ex: The amount of rainfall here is not enough.

Ex: Some farmers concern about the quantity not the quality of their yields.

- **mixture of** خليط من أشياء غير متجانسة
 ► **collection of** مجموعة من أشياء متجانسة / متشابهة

Ex: Mix the eggs, flour and butter. Put the mixture in the oven.

Ex: I have a good collection of books \ novels \ jewellery.

- **source** مصدر (معرفة/ معلومة/ طاقة....)
 ► **resource** مورد (للمعادن)

Ex: The internet is my source of information.

Ex: Egypt is full of natural resources.

- **continuous** (process, flow, line, speech, supply) مستمر (لوصف شئ يستمر دون توقف)
 ► **continual** (change, problems, questions, pain, fear) مستمر (لوصف حدث يتكرر)

Ex: Recovery after the accident will be a continuous process that may take months.

Ex: My daughters are a continual source of delight to me.

- **specially** + (P.P) خصوصا (لغرض معين)
 ► **especially** خصوصا / خاصة / لاسيما (لا توضع فى اول الجملة)

Ex: This ring was specially made for you.

Ex: Teenagers are very fashion conscious, especially girls.

- **enthusiastic (about)** متحمس لـ (تتبع بشئ)
 ► **enthusiast (n.)** شخص متحمس / حماسى (لا تتبع بشئ)

Ex: You don't sound very enthusiastic about the idea.

Ex: My brother is a football enthusiast.

- **recyclable** قابل لاعادة التصنيع / للتدوير
 ► **recycled** معاد تصنيعة / معاد تدويرة

Ex: Plastic and paper are recyclable materials.

Ex: Most newspapers and magazines today are made of recycled paper.

- **press (v.)** يضغط
 ► **the press (n.)** الصحافة

Ex: To send a fax just press the red button.

Ex: Members of the press were waiting outside.

- **reduce (v.)** يقلل / يخفض
 ► **reduce sb \sth (from sth) to sth \to doing sth.** يجبر
 ► **reduce sth to rubble \ashes \ruins.** يدمر شئ تماما

Ex: They're trying to reduce the numbers of students in the college.

Ex: She was reduced to begging in the streets.

Ex: They reduced the factory to ashes.

Grammar

8- Future tenses: أزمنة المستقبل

1. The future simple:

[Subject + will\ won't + inf.]

نستخدم المستقبل البسيط للتعبير عن :

١. للتعبير عن حقيقة في المستقبل . **Facts in the future**

⇒ I will be seventeen next year.

٢. للتنبؤ بأحداث مستقبلية . **Prediction in the future**

⇒ I think Al-Zamalek will win the match.

٣. عندما نعبّر عن قرار اتخذ بسرعة بدون ترتيب مسبق . **Quick decision**

⇒ Someone is knocking, I'll open the door.

٤. لعرض عمل شيء ما أو تقديم خدمة : **offer**

⇒ I'll wash the dishes for you, Mum.

٥. لطلب شيء أو خدمة من شخص :

⇒ Will you help me, please?

٦. لعمل ترتيبات : **making arrangements**

⇒ I'll wait for you at 7 o'clock at the bus stop.

٧. للتهديد : **threat**

⇒ Don't come here again otherwise\or I'll call the police.

٨. للوعود **promise**

⇒ I will buy you a present if you come first.

يستخدم المستقبل البسيط غالبا بعد افعال وتعبيرات مثل:

I expect .../I'm sure .../I think / I don't think / I wonder / probably /possibly / I suppose /I hope / I believe / I feel sure / Perhaps..

Ex: I expect that Al Zamalek will win the next match.

Ex: I hope that Mai will pass the exam.

Ex: We will probably buy a new car.

Ex: It's probably that Asmaa will attend the meeting.

Ex: I wonder what will happen.

2. "Going to" to express plans and intentions:

[Subject + am, is, are + going to +inf.]

نستخدم "be Going to" للتعبير عن :

١. نية أو قصد أو شيء خطط له من قبل . **intention or plan**

⇒ I'm going to travel to Luxor next week. I plan to travel to Luxor

⇒ She is going to have a party next month. She intends to have a party

٢. حدث في المستقبل وشيك الحدوث أو هناك دلائل على حدوثه (تنبؤ مبني على دليل) ومع التحذير وخصوصا مع:

Look, listen, watch out.

⇒ The sky is full of dark clouds. It's going to rain.

⇒ Look! This tree is going to fall.

تذكر: الصفات الشخصية ليست ادلة.

Ex: He is clever. He will succeed

ملاحظات:

(١) الفرق بين will + Inf. و be going to:

- إذا كان التنبؤ قائم على دليل استخدم **be going to** وإذا كان التنبؤ مجرد رأى شخصي استخدم **will**
- أما إذا كان القرار اتخذ الآن استخدم **will** أما إذا كان القرار في الماضي استخدم **be going to**
- (٢) لا يأتي مستقبل بعد الروابط الزمنية ولكن نستخدم بدلاً منه مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام.

S. + future.....**connector**.....present simple \ present perfect

Ex: I will give you the book after I finish it.

3. The present continuous:

[Subject + am, is, are + V-ing]

نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث مستقبلي تم الإعداد له مسبقاً وتحديثه :

⇒ I'm leaving early today. I've arranged it with the boss.

⇒ I'm travelling to London this evening. I've booked the ticket.

هناك أفعال شائعة الاستخدام مع المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل مثل:

(go, come, see, visit, meet, leave, to have.)

⇒ I'm seeing my dentist tomorrow morning. I've an appointment.

4. The present simple:

[Subject + verb \ verb+ s or es .]

نستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن حدث مستقبلي مؤكد حدوثه وذلك طبقاً لجدول أو خطة موضوعه مثل (مواعيد الطائرات، القطارات، العمل.....) (نفس الشيء يحدث كل يوم في نفس الموعد)

⇒ The train to Alex leaves at 8 o'clock.

ويأتي غالباً مع أفعال معينة تعبر عن تلك المعاني مثل:

(start, finish, arrive, leave, land, take off, open, close)

⇒ The museum opens at 10 a. m.

5. The future continuous:

{ subject + will be + V-ing }

نستخدم المستقبل المستمر **Will be + V.ing** لنعبر عن أننا سنكون في منتصف القيام بعمل ما في لحظة معينة في المستقبل .

⇒ Shall we go swimming at 7 o'clock?

⇒ No, I'll be doing my homework at 7 o'clock.

6. The future perfect:

{ subject + will have + P.P }

نستخدم المستقبل التام **Will have + P.P** لنعبر عن إنتهاء حدث في المستقبل.

⇒ By 2020, the government will have finished this project.

⇒ Next year I will have been married for eight years.

للفائقي والفائقات فقط :

S. + am, is, are + to + Inf.

تستخدم الصيغة السابقة للتعبير عن:

1) Official arrangement

Ex: The President is to visit South Korea next month.

Homework

1) Choose the correct answer

1. Ali is really.....about his course. He can't wait for the beginning of term.
a. enthusiastic b. enthusiasm c. enthusiast d. enthusiastically
2. I'm going to.....some information from the internet for my project.
a. upload b. download c. online d. loading
3. The television is not on. Can you press the.....?
a. bottom b. kitten c. cotton d. button
4. This novel is not.....as an e-book yet.
a. common b. available c. familiar d. valuable
5. The best thing about an.....is that you can carry a whole library and read from it at any time.
a. orkedia b. ornament c. amnesia d. encyclopedia
6. My father is a golf..... He plays and watches it on TV.
a. enthusiastic b. enthusiasm c. enthusiast d. enthusiastically
7. That play is very popular. You'd better check theof tickets.
a. suitability b. availability c. popularity d. quality
8. I wanted to complain to the manager of the shop, but he was.....
a. unavailable b. available c. availability d. unfamiliar
9. It's convenient to read through e-book.....than traditional books.
a. writer b. listener c. viewer d. reader
10. The story is an interesting.....of fact and fiction.
a. compound b. mixture c. element d. ingredient
11. You can.....white shirts to keep them looking clean.
a. soak b. decorate c. bleach d. paint
12. Today, paper, plastic and glass can all be
a. recycled b. recovered c. replaced d. reproduced
13. My brother has not shown any.....for any sport of any kind.
a. enthusiastic b. enthusiasm c. enthusiast d. enthusiastically
14. Before you can cook these beans, you have to.....them for three hours.
a. bleach b. soak c. seek d. leak
15. I've seen an interesting article on the internet which I have....onto my computer.
a. received b. done c. downloaded d. written
16. Nader is really.....about all kinds of sport. He loves playing and watching it.
a. interested b. active c. enthusiastic d. keen
17. Huge.....of water came down the river and flooded the city.
a. quantity b. number c. amount d. piece
18. Rehan has a lot of as well as hardbacks in her library at home.
a. recyclables b. mixtures c. paperbacks d. screens
19. Kareem is an reader. He reads all the time.
a. enthusiastic b. soaking c. faulty d. criminal

20. We usually beans overnight to soften before we cook them.
a. mix b. soak c. recycle d. roll
21. Use on your white clothes to get tough stains out.
a. soap b. bleach c. a scraper d. a roller
22. To paint a large area of the wall quickly, try using a paint
a. brush b. roller c. instrument d. utensil
23. We try to paper, plastic and batteries to help our environment.
a. include b. mix c. reserve d. recycle
24. contain a lot of information about many things.
a. Newspapers b. Dictionaries c. Encyclopaedias d. Thesauruses
25. With Mariam's new e-book reader, she can now books.
a. download b. write c. promise d. admit
26. Mariam seems to know everything. Her knowledge is
a. personal b. influential c. solo d. encyclopedic
27. If you like to shop online, this website has many new and used books
a. found b. authored c. available d. written
28. I'm researching volcanoes, so Isome information from a website.
a. uploaded b. downloaded c. loaded d. boarded
29. I took a great photo of the Pyramids, and I'm.....it onto a website.
a. uploading b. downloading c. loading d. boarding
30. I love books, so I often buy them.....
a. offline b. online c. deadline d. snowline
31. In ebooks, the letter 'e' stands for.....
a. electric b. electronic c. elementary d. elective
32. Most of today's newspapers and magazines are made from.....paper.
a. recycling b. recyclable c. recycled d. recycle
33. How quickly can you.....on a computer?
a. soak b. tip c. type d. top
34. We'd like to.....a table at the restaurant, please.
a. read b. download c. write d. book
35. There are a lot of.....on the ground in autumn.
a. lavas b. loaves c. lives d. leaves
36.is a type of grass.
a. Fibre b. Pepper c. Papyrus d. Paper
37. Our teacher collected our workbooks to.....them.
a. remark b. mark c. market d. mirror
38. The television is not on. Can you press the.....?
a. button b. battery c. put on d. butter
39. My first computer did not work, so they sent me a.....
a. pavement b. replacement c. development d. movement
40. The air is cleaner now because there has been a.....in the use of cars.
a. production b. introduction c. reduction d. auction
41. My exam results were.....to my brother's. They were almost the same.
a. compared b. carried c. compeled d. completed

42. After the storm, workmen.....a lot of sand from the roads.
a. soaked b. downloaded c. removed d. recycled
43. There has always been a lot of.....between Egypt and Europe.
a. trade b. mixture c. bleach d. trader
44. To.....means to make something white by using chemicals.
a. peach b. beach c. bleach d. brreach
45. To.....means to push something hard.
a. dress b. press c. bless d. stress
46. A|An.....is a large book that contains facts.
a. dictionary b. encyclopedia c. magazine d. brochure
47. A.....is a round piece of wood or metal that can be rolled.
a. role b. rule c. roller d. ruler
48. To.....means to cover something with liquid for a period of time.
a. stick b. seek c. soak d. slay
49. To.....means to buy or sell large quantities of goods.
a. steal b. trade c. communicate d. trend
50. To.....means to take something away.
a. move b. improve c. remove d. groove
51. A.....is something made by mixing two or more things together.
a. texture b. picture c. lecture d. mixture
52. Her hair was.....by the sun.
a. soaked b. bleached c. bled d. lashed
53. I'm going to wait until they.....the price of the phone before I buy it.
a. prevent b. increase c. reduce d. replace
54. We can't use the internet at the moment because the computer is.....
a. out of line b. offline c. online d. in line
55. It is best to.....the dried fish in water before you cook it.
a. sink b. seek c. soak d. save
56. The students were very helpful and helped to.....some of the rubbish that was in the canal.
a. remove b. rescue c. respect d. research
57. Do you often.....music from the internet.
a. load b. take c. download d. upload
58. The teacher is going to.....our homework tomorrow.
a. write b. do c. mark d. manufacture
59. Where does your family.....to go on holiday next summer?
a. invent b. invest c. invite d. intend
60. To make bread, first make a.....of flour and water.
a. mixture b. mixing c. moisture d. monument
61. My grandparents' house is old-fahioned and does not have many.....
a. gadgets b. galleries c. technology d. electricity
62. Are there any tickets.....for the tennis match this evening?
a. attracked b. available c. based d. belonging
63. To turn the computer on, you must press this.....
a. bazzar b. basket c. battery d. button

64. Adel loves windsurfing. He is very.....about the sport.
a. enjoyable b. enthusiastic c. excellent d. effecient
65. The computer in the library does not work, so they are going to.....it.
a. reduce b. replace c. download d. upload
66. Further information is.....on request.
a. vulnerable b. valuable c. available d. avail
67. My own problem seem insignificant.....with other people's.
a. completed b. compared c. competed d. complained
68. Giving up smoking.....the risk of heart disease.
a. induces b. replaces c. reduces d. deduces
69. She has an.....knolwedge of natural history.
a. encyclopedia b. encyclopedic c. wipikidea d. orchedia
70. Three children were.....from the school for persistent bad behavior.
a. removed b. soaked c. reduced d. downloaded
71. Tickets are.....free of charge from the school.
a. avail b. value c. available d. bearable
72. This peal is beyond.....
a. complete b. compare c. compete d. delete
73. She wasto tears by their criticism.
a. reduced b. deduced c. induced d. replaced
74. I can't talk at the moment. Imy homework.
a. will do b. am doing c. am going to do d. do
75. There's a good film on TV tonight. It.....at ten o'clock.
a. finishes b. is going to finish c. is finishing d. will finish
76. There's a good film on TV tonight. I think it.....at ten o'clock.
a. finishes b. is going to finish c. is finishing d. will finish
77. Hello, Ali. I.....to the airport in a minute.
a. will be going b. am going c. am going to go d. go
78. My plane.....at ten o'clock.
a. is leaving b. is going to leave c. will leave d. leaves
79. This school50 years old next year.
a. is b. will be c. is going to be d. is being
80. I can't visit you because Imy homework this evening.
a. will have done b. will do c. will be doing d. am going to do
81. By the end of next year, the government.....a new school in the village.
a. will build b. will be building c. will have built d. to reading
82. They've got the tickets. They.....to England.
a. will fly b. are going to fly c. fly d. will be flying
83. The other team's players are very big. It.....a difficult match.
a. is being b. is c. is going to be d. will be
84. Don't phone me late at night. I
a. wil lsleep b. will have slept c. will be sleeping d. am sleeping

85. I predict that in the future mobile phones.....much smaller.
a. are being b. are c. are going to be d. will be
86. Next year, my grandfather.....75 years old!
a. will be b. is going to be c. is d. will have been
87. Those bags look heavy, Ithem for you.
a. am going to carry b. carry c. am carrying d. will carry
88. At ten o'clock tomorrow, Ilunch with my friends.
a. will have eaten b. will be eating
c. will eat d. am going to eat
89. By ten o'clock tomorrow, Iall my homework.
a. will have finished b. will be finishing
c. will finish d. am going to finish
90. The train to Cairo is on platform four and it.....in thirty minutes.
a. leaves b. is going to leave
c. is leaving d. will leave
91. There are a lot of people in the room. It.....difficult to find a chair.
a. will be b. is going to be c. is d. is being
92. Look, there's a sandstorm. Ithe windows.
a. will have closed b. will be closing
c. will close d. am going to close
93. I haven't seen my cousin in England for five years. I'm sure she.....a lot!
a. is growing b. is going to grow
c. grows d. will grow
94. We.....a family party on Saturday. Would you like to come?
a. have b. will have
c. are going to have d. are having
95. Experts think that Cairo.....by more than half a million people next year.
a. is growing b. is going to grow
c. grows d. will grow
96. Our last lesson.....at two o'clock this afternoon.
a. will finish b. is finishing c. finishes d. finish
97. A lot of people are waiting for the museum to open. It.....busy there today.
a. is being b. was c. is going to be d. has been
98. It is very hot in the house. Ion the air conditioner.
a. am turning b. turn c. will turn d. am going to turn
99. Don't be late. The bus.....at exactly ten o'clock.
a. going to leave b. left c. has left d. leaves
100. We can't use classroom five tomorrow because they.....the walls.
a. paint b. will have painted c. are painting d. will paint
101. The mechanic.....repairing your car by the end of the week.
a. will finish b. will have finished
c. will be finishing d. is finishing
102. The teacher says that we.....relative clauses next week.
a. going to study b. study c. are studying d. studying
103. At ten o'clock tomorrow, Ion a train to Aswan.
a. travel b. will have travelled
c. going to travel d. will be travelling

104. It's 35 degrees and it's only 7 a.m. It.....very hot today.

- a. was b. is going to be c. is being d. will be being

105. We.....studying this book by the end of this year.

- a. will finish b. will have finished
c. will be finishing d. is finishing

106. Hala's cousin.....to the station so he can take the train to Alexandria.

- a. is going to be taken b. will take
c. is going to take d. will be taking

107. Maram is very clever. I think she.....high marks.

- a. get b. will get c. is going to get d. is getting

108. There are no clouds in the sky today. I think that it.....very hot.

- a. will be b. is going to be
c. will be being d. will have been

109. By 2025, Imy education.

- a. will be finishing b. will have finished
c. will finish d. am going to finish

110. After Ireading this book, I will lend it to you.

- a. finished b. had finished c. was finishing d. finish

111. I'm sure the publishersthe price when more people buy them.

- a. are reducing b. will reduce c. reduce d. will be reducing

112. Don't come here again otherwise Ithe police for you.

- a. will be calling b. will have called c. will call d. am calling

113. Someone's at the door. I.....who it is.

- a. see b. am going to see c. am seeing d. will see

114. No one.....forever.

- a. is living b. will live c. is going to live d. will be living

116. Mother.....the housework between 10 a.m. and 2 p.m. tomorrow.

- a. is doing b. will have done c. will be doing d. will be

117. Be careful or you.....yourself.

- a. is hurting b. will be hurting c. will hurt d. will have hurt

118. Mai and Shorouk have decided to have a party. They.....lots of friends.

- a. are inviting b. will invite c. invite d. are going to invite

119. They have been married for 10 years. Next year, they.....married for 11 years.

- a. will be being b. will have been c. will be d. are

120. I feel terrible. I think Isick.

- a. will have been b. am going to be c. will have been d. will be

121. You.....better after you have something to eat.

- a. will feel b. are feeling c. feel d. will be feeling

122. The boat is leaking. It.....

- a. is sinking b. will sink c. is going to sink d. sinks

123. Ianyone what happened. I promise.

- a. won't tell b. don't tell c. am not going to tell d. will be telling

124. I hope Alaa.....this evening.

- a. will phone b. phones c. is going to phone d. is phoning

125. We.....a party tomorrow. Everything is arranged.

- a. will have b. are having c. have d. are going to have

2) Read the following passage , then answer the questions:

Cyberbullying is when someone uses technology to send mean, threatening, or embarrassing messages to or about another person. It might be in a text, e-mail, message, or in a post online. Cyberbullying can be **anonymous**, which can sometimes make it even worse. It also has a wider audience, and can spread quickly. Targets of cyberbullying often feel like they can't get away from the bullying. If someone is bullying you at school, when you leave for the day it's over. But cyberbullying can follow you home, and continue all night. Imagine a classmate posts a photo of themselves online. Someone else makes a mean, mocking comment about it. Soon, that photo has been shared, liked, reposted. Thousands of people have seen it – even people the target doesn't know. That's why cyberbullying can be extra hurtful: it's public and it spreads quickly.

Here are some **tips** to protect yourself from cyberbullying: Never share your passwords, private photos, or personal data online, not even with friends. Think before you post. If you're upset, sad, or angry, wait to post or respond. Give yourself some time to cool down, so you don't do something that you can't take back. Never publicly reveal anything that you wouldn't be comfortable with anyone knowing. When you make comments about someone else, imagine how you would feel if someone said that about you.

1. The word **tips** in the passage means.....
 a. money b. advice c. food d. guns
2. People should their personal data online.
 a. share b. post c. hide d. sell
3. The **anonymous** means.....
 a. known b. not known c. clear d. obvious
4. It is.....to get away from cyberbullying.
 a. easy b. difficult c. simple d. fragile
5. The one.....post on the internet when he is upset or sad.
 a. should b. shouldn't c. can't d. must
6. The underlined pronoun 'it' refers to.....
 a. the school day b. bullying c. cyberbullying d. school
7. How can a person avoid cyberbullying?

8. Why is cyberbullying more dangerous than bullying?

9. What does a cyberbully use to threaten people?

10. What makes cyberbullying worse?

4) Finish the following dialogue:

- Ameer : (1)?
- Hazem : As far as I'm concerned, modern technology has changed our life a lot.
- Ameer : (2)?
- Hazem : Like anything else, sure it has disadvantages.
- Ameer : Can you mention some of them?
- Hazem : (3)
- Ameer : (4) People have become lazier .
- Hazem : Everything has become available and fast in a glance even (5)
- Ameer : What do you mean by our feelings have become fast?
- Hazem : Our feelings now pass through wires. It has become electronic feelings.
- Ameer : Oh, thank you very much for such a wonderful conversation.
- Hazem : (6)

5) Write a paragraph of (120) words about ONE (1) only of the following:

- a) Recycling.
- b) A day you will never forget.

Translation

6) a) Translate into Arabic :

1- Papyrus is a tall grass that grew in the Nile Valley and was used in ancient Egypt for writing and drawing on.

.....

2- Paper and plastic are recyclable materials.

.....

b) Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English :

١- هل تعتقد ان الكتب الالكترونية ستحل محل الكتب التقليدية ؟ .

.....

٢- اصبح من اليسير الان الوصول الى الانترنت فى اى مكان وبسرعات عالية جدا.

.....

"واصبر على مايقولون واهجرهم هجراً جميلاً"
هكذا صاغ لنا الله تعالى الراحة النفسية
في تجنب بعض البشر !

أجمل لحظة ؛ أن يتحقق في النهاية
حلمك الذي صبرت لأجله ؛
ف يارب حقق لنا ما نتمنى

صبراً يا من
ضاقت بك الدنيا
لوقعلم ما لك
عند الله لبكيت
فرحاً وأطمئن قلبك
قل يارب

REVISION A**LISTENING****My Father, An Egyptian Teacher**

My father was a teacher in Beni Suef. Every day, he left home early to teach his first class, and came home late, his bag heavy with the books he had to mark that evening. I often asked him, "Do they pay you enough for all this hard work?" He smiled and said, "I'm not the owner of a shop who can get money for the goods he sells. But I think I will be **rewarded** one day."

My father continued to work hard until many years later when he became ill. I took him to see a famous doctor in Cairo. We paid two pounds to see him. That was a lot of money then, **especially** for a teacher. Soon we were taken to the doctor's room. The doctor looked at my father for a long time. He asked him many questions while he was examining him. Then he suggested that my father should spend a few days at his own **private hospital**. My father did not want to accept, because this was very expensive.

The doctor then gave him something and said, "Bring this and some clothes to the hospital tomorrow morning." My father looked at what the doctor had given him. It was two pounds. "Why have you returned the money?" he asked. The doctor smiled. "Please accept this money and listen to what I have to say."

I was one of your pupils at Beni Suef. I know it is not easy for you to remember the many pupils that you teach, but we have always **remembered** you. I have always wanted to meet you again, because you are behind every success that I have had in life."

My father looked at the kind doctor and said, "I have worked hard as a teacher for a moment like this! I'm so happy to know that my work has made your life **successful**!"

READING**The history of libraries**

One of the most amazing and influential libraries in the world is the Bibliotheca of Alexandria. It opened in 2002 and can hold eight million books. But we have had libraries for thousands of years. Probably the oldest library that you can still visit is al-Qarawiyyin Library in Morocco. The daughter of a trader established the library in 859 CE. However, people had collected books a long time before this.

Archaeologists have found writing on collections of papyrus in Amarna and Thebes from around 1300 BCE. The ancient Greeks had libraries where they kept thousands of originals books (they did not want copies). The famous Library of Alexandria opened in around 300 BCE. The aim of this library was to have one of each of the world's books, although books were then made of papyrus or leather.

Before 1450, people had written books by hand. Then, people started printing books for the first time. Many universities also started to open, and most of these had important

libraries. The rulers of many countries understood the importance of books to people's education and began to open national libraries. Now there are many very famous national libraries around the world. The British Library opened in 1753 as part of the British Museum and is one of the largest libraries in the world. It keeps one of all the books, magazines, newspapers and maps printed in Britain. By 1988, there were so many of these that it had to move to a new, bigger building.

Today, you can also use digital libraries, where thousands of books and magazines are available to people online. An example is the Egyptian Knowledge Bank (www.ekb.eg) which has dictionaries, encyclopedias, videos and all kinds of books online. People have been very enthusiastic about this digital library since it opened in 2016.

EXTRA READING

Using information online

If you can access the internet, you can also access the world's biggest library. The problem is that the library is so big that it is not always easy to find what you need.

If you want a particular website, it is easy to type in the website address (URL), then the pages will appear on your screen. However, if you don't have the name of a website, you can easily use a search engine. These are computer programs that look through thousands of websites for keywords. They then show you the results of the search, and you can choose the website you need.

Remember that keywords are important. If you type in one word *_pyramids*, for example – you will get thousands of search results. If you put in too many words, the search engine might find many websites which are not relevant. So it is best to put in three or four important keywords, for example *oldest pyramid in world*.

Search engines are very useful, but it is important to remember that not all websites are reliable. Some companies pay to have their websites appear first in search results. Some websites will give information that might be inaccurate. What they say is a fact might only be their opinion. Some websites might want to sell you something.

How do you know which information is reliable? You can usually trust university or government websites and the websites of big media companies. However, if you are not sure, check any facts on two or three different websites to make sure that they all say the same thing. Check that the information on the website is not old information, too. The website should say when the information was last updated.

VOCABULARY

teaching (n.)	تدريس	access (n.\v.)	وصول / يصل
reward (n.\v.)	مكافأة / يكافئ	accuracy (n.)	دقة
rewarding (adj.)	مكافئ / مجزى	accurate (adj.)	دقيق
goods (n.)	بضائع	inaccurate (adj.)	غير دقيق
surprised (adj.)	مندعش	keyword (n.)	كلمة مفتاحية
pay (n.\v.)	اجر / يدفع	media (n.)	وسائل
carriage (n.)	عربه يجرها حصان	relevant (adj.)	ذو صلة
The country (n.)	الريف	relevance (n.)	صلة / ارتباط
archeologists (n.)	علماء اثار	search (n.\v.)	بحث / يبحث
amazing (adj.)	مدهش	type (n.\v.)	نوع / يكتب
amazed (adj.)	مندعش	address (n.)	عنوان
amazement (n.)	دهشة	results (n.)	نتائج
influential (adj.)	ذو تأثير	reliable (adj.)	موثوق به
Bibliotheca (n.)	مكتبة	conclusion (n.)	خلاصة
library (n.)	مكتبة	conclude (n.)	يلخص
Morocco (n.)	دولة المغرب	grandchildren (n.)	احفاد
daughter (n.)	ابنة	particular (adj.)	خاص / محدد
son (n.)	ابن	air condition (n.)	تكييف
trader (n.)	تاجر	technology (n.)	تكنولوجيا
online (adj.)	موصول بالنت	sensible (adj.)	عاقل
offline (adj.)	غير موصول بالنت	distinguished (adj.)	مميز
copy (n.\v.)	نسخة / ينسخ	works (n.)	اعمال فنية او ادبية
aim (n.\v.)	هدف / يهدف	thinkers (n.)	مفكرين
leather (n.)	جلد	honour (n.\v.)	شرف / يشرف
title (n.)	عنوان (كتاب) / لقب	appreciate (v.)	يقدر
list (n.)	قائمة	appreciation (n.)	تقدير
website (n.)	موقع الكترونى	citizens (n.)	مواطنين
facts (n.)	حقائق	bearer (n.)	حامل (شئ)
rulers (n.)	حكام	gallery (n.)	صالة عرض فنية
education (n.)	تعليم	wealthy (adj.)	غنى
importance (n.)	اهمية	Bank notes (n.)	اوراق نقدية
up-to-date (adj.)	حديث	coins (n.)	عملات معدنية
update (v.)	يحدث (بيانات)	ink (n.)	حبر
maps (n.)	خرائط	needs (n.)	احتياجات
appear (v.)	يختفى	flour (n.)	دقيق
digital (adj.)	رقمى	handwritten (adj.)	مكتوب يدويا
available (adj.)	متوافر / متاح	presents (n.)	هدايا
charity (n.)	جمعية خيرية	subject (n.)	موضوع / مادة
papyrus (n.)	ورق بردى	original (adj.)	اصلى
wisely (adv.)	بحكمة	Greece (n.)	اليونان
wisdom (n.)	حكمة	Greek (n.)	يونانى
CE (n.)	العهد / العصر الحالى / الحديث	mostly (adv.)	معظم
BCE (n.)	قبل العهد الحديث / الحالى	drive (v.)	يوصل

Prepositions حروف جر

heavy with	ثقيل بـ	on websites	على مواقع الكترونية
enthusiastic about	متحمس بخصوص	on TV	فى التلفاز
kind to	عطوف على	on the internet	على الانترنت
last for	يستمر/ يدوم لـ.....	fight with	يقاقل مع
find out about	يعرف/ يكتشف عن...	The results of...	نتائج.....
made of	مصنوع من	look through	يبحث خلال
available to	متوافر/ متاح لـ	on the screen	على الشاشة
type in	يخرج	pay to + Inf	يدفع لـ / لى
care for	يهتم بـ	pay for + noun	يدفع مقابل
on the metro	بواسطة المترو	at the moment	فى اللحظة
by hand	باليده/ يدوى	For this reason	ولهذا السبب
encourage....to	يشجع.....للى	At the end of....	فى نهاية.....

Expressions تعبيرات

The Bibliotheca Alexandria	مكتبة الاسكندرية	local charity	جمعية خيرية محلية
National library	مكتبة قومية	search engine	محرك بحث
Digital library	مكتبة رقمية	printed books	كتب مطبوعة
collect book	يجمع كتب	original books	كتب اصلية
Hold books	تحمل كتب	the ancient Greeks	اليونانيون القدماء
The British Museum	المتحف البريطانى	access the internet	الوصول للانترنت
website address	كتب مدرسية	media companies	شركات اعلامية
particular website	بطول/بجزء النيل	The Egyptian Knowledge Bank	بنك المعرفة المصرى
government websites	يخترع ورق	adventure film	فيلم مغامرة
search results	يصنع ورق	a school secretary	سكرتيرة مدرسة
Chinese traders	رحالة عرب	As a result	كنتيجة
Chinese traders	رحالة عرب		

Definitions تعريفات

- 1 - access** يوصل / وصول
- to find and use information, especially on a computer.
(وصول accessibility - لا يمكن الوصول اليه inaccessible - سهل الوصول/ يمكن الوصول اليه accessible)
- 2 - appear** يظهر (appearance مظهر / ظهور)
- to begin to be seen.
- 3 - inaccurate** غير دقيق (accuracy دقة - accurate دقيق)
- not correct.
- 4 - keyword** كلمة دلالية / مفتاحية
- a word that is very important or necessary.
- 5 - media** وسائل الاعلام (mass media - وسيلة medium) وسائل (اعلامية)
- television, radio, and newspapers

6 - relevant ذوصلة (relevance صلة / ارتباط - irrelevant ليس له صلة)
- directly relating to the subject or problem being discussed.

7 - search engine محرك بحث
- a computer program that looks for keywords on different websites.

8 - update (تحديث update) يحدث (بيانات/معلومات/ شيء)
- to add the most recent information about something.

Homework

1) Choose the correct answer

1. Some people think that teaching is not a/an.....job because of its poor pay.
a. awarding b. rewarding c. wording d. warding
2. Most teachers' bags are always.....with books.
a. heavy b. light c. hard d. empty
3. Mr. Mahrous is very.....to his students, he is really good to them.
a. strict b. kind c. keen d. keep
4. Karim is going to study law next year. His course.....in September.
a. will start b. is going to start c. starts d. is starting
5. We expect Mai.....the exam.
a. is passing b. passes c. will pass d. is going to pass
6. I'm sure that you.....your time in Cairo.
a. will enjoy b. is enjoying c. will enjoy d. will be enjoying
7.she left school, I haven't seen her.
a. Ever b. Never c. So far d. Since
8. You can borrow books and magazines from the Egyptian.....Bank.
a. Know b. Knowledge c. Knowledgeable d. Known
9. In.....libraries books and magazines are available online.
a. traditional b. digital c. real d. numeral
10. The Bibliotheca Alexandria.....in 2002.
a. was opened b. opened c. open d. opening
11. Archeologists have found writing on.....of papyrus in Amarna around 1300 BCE.
a. mixtures b. compounds c. mixtures d. containers
12. As as I'm concerned, you should see a doctor.
a. for b. fair c. fur d. far
13. Our homework is to find.....the oldest pyramid in the world.
a. out b. out about c. about out d. out of
14. You should always.....your data online.
a. up-to-date b. update c. updown d. date
15. Google is considered one of the most common.....engines on the internet.
a. research b. search c. source d. motor
16. All your information is..... Nothing is right at all.
a. accurate b. inaccurate c. correct d. acrobat
17. I couldn't.....the file because it had a password.
a. accessory b. access c. accelerate d. accept
18. The World Cup for Football got a lot of.....coverage in Russia 2018.
a. media b. access c. relevant d. medal

19. The question is not.....to my point.
a. reluctant b. reliant c. relative d. relevant
20. Suddenly a face.....at the window.
a. appealed b. appeared c. applauded d. applied
21. To make a fast search on search engines, you should use.....
a. keywords b. keyholes c. keynotes d. keyboards
22. What.....when I called you? You sounded very busy.
a. did you do b. had you done c. were you doing d. do you do
23. While Ion holiday, I met my old friend Ola.
a. was being b. had been c. was d. have been
24. By the time Nadia arrived home, mom.....cooking lunch.
a. has finished b. had finished c. was finishing d. finishes
25. The team.....their uniforms while they played the match.
a. were wearing b. wore c. had worn d. has worn
26. I can't meet you tonight because Imy uncle.
a. am going to visit b. will visit c. am visiting d. visit
27. Ahmed.....his leg so he can't play football today.
a. was hurt b. had hurt c. has hurt d. was hurting
28. Sara is not here. She.....to the dentist's.
a. has been b. has gone c. had been d. had gone
29. What have you.....done that you would like to do?
a. ever b. never c. since d. for
30. The president.....Paris next week.
a. will visit b. is visiting c. is to visit d. visits

Translation

6) a) Translate into Arabic :

1- Throughout history, our scientists have fascinated the world with their amazing discoveries. They have enriched scientific research

.....

2- There are four methods to managing waste: recycling, landfilling, composting and incinerating.

.....

b) Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English :

١- أعدك بأن اخرج معك ولكن ليس قبل ان انهى واجبى المدرسى،

.....

٢- الصينيون هم اول من قام بصناعة الورق .

.....

Practice Test 1a

A. Vocabulary and structure

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nesma first met her best friend when she..... at primary school .
a. has been b. was being c. was d. is
2. I'm going to wait until they..... the price of the phone before I buy it.
a. prevent b. increase c. reduce d. replace
3. What at midday yesterday?
a. are you doing b. were you doing c. you were doing d. have you done
4. We can't use the internet at the moment because the computer is
a. out of line b. offline c. online d. in line
5. Kamal an English person before he met my friend Jack.
a. did not meet b. has not met c. won't meet d. had not met
6. It is best to the dried fish in water before you cook it.
a. sink b. seek c. soak d. save
7. Before there was a bus to her village, Mona and her brother.....to school.
a. had always walked b. were walking c. have always walked d. walk
8. The students were very helpful and helped to.....some of the rubbish that was in the canal.
a. remove b. rescue c. respect d. research
9. You can't talk to Tarek because he..... out.
a. used to go b. had gone c. has just gone d. goes
10. Do you often..... music from the internet?
a. load b. take c. download d. up load
11. Ola is nervous because she..... a talk to the class before.
a. never gives b. had never given c. never used to give d. has never given
12. My father said that his teacher was very.....My father couldn't talk in his lessons!
a. serious b. strict c. fatherly d. kind
13. Don't be late. The bus at exactly ten o'clock!
a. leaves b. going to leave c. has left d. left
14. Nabila.....her grandchildren. She always gives them lots of food and presents!
a. annoys b. hates c. spills d. spoils
15. A lot of people are waiting for the museum to open. It.....busy there today!
a. is being b. was c. is going to be d. has been
16. The teacher is going to our homework tomorrow.
a. write b. do c. mark d. manufacture
17. It is very hot in the house. I on the air conditioner.
a. am turning b. turn c. will turn d. am going to turn
18. Hazem does not like cold water but we.....him that swimming is good for him!
a. encouraged b. convinced c. confused d. discouraged
19. We can't use classroom five tomorrow because they..... the walls.
a. paint b. will have painted c. are painting d. will paint
20. Where does your familyto go on holiday next summer?
a. invent b. invest c. invite d. intend
21. The mechanicrepairing your car by the end of the week.
a. will finish b. will have finished c. will be finishing d. is finishing
22. To make bread, first make a..... of flour and water.
a. mixture b. mixing c. moisture d. monument
23. I haven't seen the new adventure film
a. just b. yet c. already d. never
24. The school secretary is for sending emails to the parents.
a. irresponsible b. respected c. responsible d. awarded
25. Ahmed London. He is going to return to Cairo next week.
a. has gone b. has been c. has gone to d. has been to

26. Not many people have read my cousin's book because she could not find a.....
 a. library b. publisher c. bookshop d. bookseller
27. Karim has been really good at English.....he went to England on holiday last summer.
 a. when b. for c. although d. since
28. My grandparents' house is old-fashioned and does not have many
 a. gadgets b. galleries c. technology d. electricity
29. When we saw the hotel, we.....that it was a great place for a holiday.
 a. were knowing b. had known c. have known d. knew
30. This film is very.....I'd prefer to watch something that will make us laugh!
 a. sensible b. funny c. serious d. fun

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dear Ali,

How are you?

I had wanted to email you before I started my new job, but I did not have time! I've now worked here for two weeks. I'm working in an old building in the middle of the city at the moment and I travel to work by bus. By the end of next year, they will have finished building a new office in a different part of the city. So after that, I'll be travelling to work every day on the metro!

Before I started this job, I hadn't known very much about new technology. Now I use it every day. I often talk to people in other countries, using the internet. The work is different every day. Yesterday I was interviewing a businesswoman from Japan.

Today I'm visiting a new hotel in Cairo and tomorrow I'm going to a meeting in Damietta. I think I'll have to get up very early because the train leaves at 5 a.m.!

The job is very tiring and I don't have a routine yet, but I'm enjoying it. I have already written a lot of articles. You can read them online. I've met some famous people, too. There is a photo of me interviewing a politician in the attachment to this email. He works for the Ministry of *Antiquities*, so he knows all about ancient Egypt. I haven't met any sports people yet, but there is an important tennis competition next month. There are some famous tennis players going there and I'm sure I'll interview one.

Write soon.

Best wishes,

Munir

1. For how long has Munir done this job?

- a. for a year b. for two weeks c. since he moved offices d. since last May

2. Why does he have to get up early tomorrow?

- a. He's interviewing a businessman. b. He's visiting a new hotel.
 c. He is going to a meeting. d. He's interviewing a politician.

3. Why did someone take a photo of Munir?

- a. He is famous. b. He was meeting a famous person.
 c. He wanted a photo to send to his friend. d. Because his article is online.

4. What is the main idea of the email?

- a. Munir's new job is boring. b. Munir doesn't like his new job.
 c. Munir's new job is busy but exciting. d. Munir wants his job to pay him more money.

5. What does the underlined word one refer to?

- a. tennis competitions c. a famous tennis player
 b. business people d. a politician

6. What does the word *antiquities* means?

- a. very old things b. farming c. medicine d. education

7. Find a suitable subject for this email.

.....

8. How does Munir usually communicate with people in the countries?

.....

9. What job do you think Munir does?

10. Why didn't Munir email his friend before he got the job?

The Novel

3 a. Choose the correct answer:

1. What special event is going to take place in Ruritania?

- a. There will be a war.
- b. There will be a new King.
- c. There will be a new Duke of Strelsau.
- d. Colonel Sapt is going to become ruler.

2. Who is the Duke of Strelsau?

- a. He is the true King of Ruritania .
- b. He is the King 's father.
- c. He is the King's half brother.
- d. He is Rudolf Rassendyll's brother.

3. Why does Fritz von Tarlenheim say that he understands Rudolf Rassendyll well?

- a. They are both officers for a King or Queen.
- b. They both want to be King.
- c. They both look like the King .
- d. They both want to meet the Duke.

4. As well as how he looks, in what way is Rudolf Rassendyll like the King?

- a. They are not kind men.
- b. They both have an easy life.
- c. They both like fighting.
- d. They are both English.

b. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions:

1. What kind of a person do you think that Rudolf Rassendyll is?

2. Rassendyll's position in society gave him opportunities. Do you agree? Why?

3. Do you think there might be a problem with the fact that Rudolf looks very much like the King?

C. Writing

4 Finish the following dialogue:

Amir is discussing his homework with Nasser.

Amir : I need to research information about Rudyard Kipling for an essay, but I don't know which website to use.

Nasser : 1).....?

Amir : I tried typing his name into a search engine but I got hundreds of results. One website said that he wrote only one poem.

Nasser : 2).....
He wrote lots of poems. Where did you find that information?

Amir : It's a website called *All about poems*. Do you think that the information is wrong?

Nasser : Yes. 3)..... I think that's incorrect. What's the title of the essay?

Amir : 4).....

Nasser : OK. Type the essay title *Rudyard Kipling's most popular poems* in the search engine. You will get fewer results now.

Amir : Yes, look: *Kipling's ten most popular poems!*

Nasser : 5).....?

Amir : Yes, I think it is very useful.

Nasser : It's important to write down your sources of information. 6).....?

Amir : That's a good idea. I'll write it at the bottom of my work.

5 Write a paragraph of about ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following:

- A. a summary of a book that you have enjoyed.
B. a teacher who has helped you.

[illegible]

⑥ A Translate into Arabic:

1. We all appreciate the profession of teaching because a good teacher builds a good citizen.
.....
2. We should honour great writers and thinkers, especially those who have published distinguished works.

B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English:

- ١ - لقد كتب الروائي عبد التواب يوسف العديد من قصص الأطفال المثيرة.

- ٢- بمجرد أنى رأيت الحادث ، اتصلت بالشرطة و حضروا على الفور.

Practice Test 1b

A. Vocabulary and structure

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The writer wrote his first story when he at university.
a. was being b. had been c. was d. has been
2. London has a / an of 557 mm of rain each year.
a. average b. number c. ability d. water
3. My little brother is sad because he his favourite toy.
a. is breaking b. was breaking c. had broken d. has broken
4. I sometimes get between the meanings of *whether* and *weather*.
a. confirmed b. confident c. confused d. concluded
5. Dina..... the test when the teacher told them to stop.
a. hasn't finished b. hadn't finished c. not finishing d. haven't finished
6. Kamal did not want to tidy his room before he went out, but his mother.....
a. told b. ordered c. insisted d. said
7. The car.....fast when it hit the tree.
a. was moving b. moves c. has moved d. is moving
8. Hoda's father works for an important
a. graduate b. building c. ministry d. work
9. I've tried Chinese food, but I haven't tried French food
a. already b. never c. yet d. just
10. Walid always makes a revision two months before the exams.
a. plain b. plane c. pain d. plan
11. Your bags look heavy. I you to carry them.
a. will be helped b. am helping c. help d. will help
12. Are there any tickets..... for the tennis match this evening?
a. attracted b. available c. based d. belonging
13. The teacher says that we relative clauses next week.
a. going to study b. study c. are studying d. studying
14. To turn the computer on, you must press this
a. bazaar b. basket c. battery d. button
15. My grandfather..... 70 on his next birthday!
a. is being b. will be c. is going to be d. will have been
16. Adel loves windsurfing. He is very about the sport.
a. enjoyable b. enthusiastic c. excellent d. efficient
17. The police know what the thief at eight o'clock last night.
a. has done b. does c. was doing d. is doing
18. I sent my friend an email with a photo as an
a. attached b. attachment c. attack d. attractive
19. The tourists walking until they had reached the top of the mountain.
a. didn't stop b. stopped c. haven't stopped d. won't stop
20. Hamid is and cannot walk.
a. deaf b. blind c. unable d. disabled
21. Ali isn't here. He..... to the park.
a. has been b. has gone c. had been d. had gone
22. The head teacher believes that..... is very important in the classroom.
a. discipline b. indifference c. violence d. noise
23. At ten o'clock tomorrow, I on a train to Aswan!
a. travel b. will have travelled c. going to travel d. will be travelling
24. My father does the same things every day. He likes to have a
a. root b. work c. routine d. way
25. We studying this book by the end of this year.
a. finish b. will be finishing c. will have finished d. are finishing

26. There was a at the university about new technology.

- a. legend b. lie c. tale d. lecture

27. I the office until I had checked that all the doors were locked.

- a. won't leave b. wouldn't leave c. hadn't left d. wasn't left

28. The head teacher..... the students before the visitor gave her talk.

- a. silenced b. declared c. sheltered d. shouted

29. It's 35 degrees and it's only 7 a.m. It very hot today.

- a. was b. is going to be c. is being d. will be being

30. The computer in the library does not work, so they are going to..... it.

- a. reduce b. replace c. download d. upload

B. Reading Comprehension

② Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Chinese invented paper, and they were also the first to use paper bank notes for money. Before paper notes were invented in the seventh century, wealthy Chinese traders had used metal coins. These had a hole in the middle so that traders could carry them on pieces of material. But these were very heavy to carry. As a result, traders left the money with someone they trusted. Instead, they carried a piece of paper which said how much money they had. The trader could use this paper note to promise anyone that they could pay for the goods that they wanted to buy.

People in Europe only started to use paper bank notes in the seventeenth century. In England, the King needed money to help fight a war with France. Banks encouraged people to leave money with them and gave handwritten notes saying how much money they had left. The notes said, "I promise to pay the **bearer** the sum of ... " and you can still see the same words on English notes today. Bank workers continued to hand write notes until 1853, when the first notes were printed.

The paper used for bank notes is usually made from a mixture of paper and cotton, and sometimes other materials. Although these other materials make the notes stronger than normal paper, most bank notes only last for about two years. For this reason, some countries tried using plastic notes in 1983. However, the first plastic notes in England were not very successful because the ink came off the notes onto people's hands! Five years later, in 1988, Australia successfully used plastic notes for the first time. Today, many countries use plastic notes, which are stronger than paper notes, last longer and are harder to copy.

1. Why did Chinese traders first use notes instead of coins?

- a. Because the coins were too heavy to carry. b. Because coins had holes in them.
c. Because traders could not trust everyone. d. Because they preferred paper.

2. Why did banks in England first want people to leave their money with them?

- a. The King needed money to fight a war. b. People preferred notes to coins.
c. People wanted their money to be safe. d. Banks opened for the first time.

3. Why were notes handwritten until 1853?

- a. It was cheaper this way.
b. It was faster this way.
c. There was not any technology to print them before this time.
d. It was hard to copy the handwriting.

4. What is the main idea of the text?

- a. Why we use money. b. Why we use banks.
c. The history of paper bank notes. d. The history of trade.

5. What does the underlined word them refer to?

- a. the King's men b. the men in France
c. the people who had the money d. the banks

6. What does the word **bearer** mean?

- a. someone who works in a bank b. a Chinese trader
c. someone who carries something d. someone who works for the King

7. When and where were paper bank notes first used?

.....

8. Why was there a hole in the metal coins invented by the Chinese?

9. Do you think people will continue to use paper bank notes in the future or will there be a different way of exchanging money? Explain.

10. Do you think that more countries will use plastic notes in the future? Why / Why not?

The Novel

3 a Choose the correct answer:

1. What is the reason that Rudolf Rassendyll gives for being lazy?

- a. Because he comes from an important family. b. Because he doesn't have a good job.
c. Because he never helps in the house. d. Because he never wants to travel.

2. What job does Rose persuade Rudolf Rassendyll to do?

- a. work with an ambassador b. teach children
c. write a book d. work in a hotel

3. Which of these is *not* a reason that Rudolf Rassendyll decides to visit Ruritania?

- a. He has six months before his job starts.
b. His family have relatives there.
c. Rudolf the Fifth is to become King of Ruritania there shortly.
d. He wants to be the ambassador to Ruritania .

4. Who do Fritz von Tarlenheim and Colonel Sapt work for?

- a. Duke Michael b. the King c. Johann d. Antoinette de Mauban

b. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions:

1. If you were Rassendyll , would you prefer to travel to Ruritania or to stay in England to do useful work? Why?

2. Which character is wiser in your opinion, Fritz or Sapt? Say why.

3. Do you think Rassendyll was lucky to look exactly like the King of Ruritania? Why?

C. Writing

4 Finish the following dialogue:

Zeinab and Riham are planning a school project.

Zeinab: It says here that because Australia is moving north every year, sat-navs can't find some important places.

Riham : 1)..... . It can't be true.

Zeinab: No, this is real news. It is not fake.

Riham : 2).....?

Zeinab: I can prove it because it's on the website of an organisation that I can trust. Do you think that I should write about this for my school project?

Riham : Yes. 3).....

Zeinab: I agree, it would be interesting. How do you think I should start it?

Riham : 4).....

Zeinab: OK, I'll start by describing why it is moving north.

Riham : You should definitely include where you got the information, too. 5).....?

Zeinab: It's a website called *True facts about Australia*. 6).....?

Riham That's a good idea. I'll see if I can find other interesting information on the same website.

5 Write an email to a friend of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following:

Your name is Nour. Your friend's name is Wessam. His/Her address is Wessam@newmail.com.

- A. A teacher who has helped or inspired you
- B. Which websites you should use to find out reliable information

[illegible]

⑥ A Translate into Arabic:

1. A good teacher should be responsible and serious, and care for the needs of students.
-
2. Walid was tired this evening because he had played tennis all morning.

B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English:

- ١- لقد كان يحيى حقي واحد من رواد الأدب المصري الحديث.
-
- ٢- في مصر القديمة ، استخدم الناس نوعا من النباتات الطويلة يسمى البردي في صناعة الورق.

Unit 4

Women in History

Listening



Dr Aisha Abd El-Rahman, who is better known to some people as Bint El-Shatei, is one of the most famous people in Egyptian and Arab **culture**. As well as writing books on society and culture, she also wrote poems and for fifty years wrote for the newspaper Al Ahram. During her life, she helped to **improve** women's position in Egyptian society. Dr Aisha was born in 1913. Her father was an important man and Dr Aisha **used to go** with him to meetings, at which she learned to read and write. At a time when many girls didn't go to school, Aisha's mother encouraged her daughter to get a good education and, as a result, Aisha started school **at the age of** five. Dr Aisha was successful at school and went to Cairo University, where she studied Arabic language and literature. She was awarded her degree in 1939 and then joined the university **staff** as a research assistant. In 1942, she was employed as a government **inspector** for the teaching of Arabic **literature**. Using the name Bint El Shatei, Dr Aisha wrote many books and articles in which she **argued for** a more **positive role** for women in the modern world. Dr Aisha was **a respected teacher** and taught at many universities across the Arab world. With her husband, Professor Amin El-Kholy, Dr Aisha spent holidays visiting European museums, universities and libraries. Dr Aisha died in 1998 at the age of eighty five. Her work, **which** had **taken up** much of her **personal life**, is still **appreciated** today.

Reading



Florence Nightingale

Florence Nightingale was born in 1820 into a **wealthy** family in Italy, but grew up and went to school in England. When she was 17, she decided that she wanted to be a nurse, although her family did not think that this was a **suitable job** for their young daughter. However, Florence's work in a London hospital was so **effective** that the British government asked her to be **in charge of** the nursing of wounded soldiers abroad. After working in Europe, she returned to England and opened the Nightingale School of Nursing in London, the first school of this kind.

Lotfia El Nadi

In 1932, Lotfia El Nadi was the first and only woman to join a new school for pilots at Almaza airport. Her parents did not want her to be a pilot, so El Nadi worked as a secretary at the airport to **pay for** her lessons. When she was only 26, El Nadi became the first woman in Egypt to have a **pilot's licence**. In December 1933, she became famous when she flew **solo** in an international race, which went from Cairo to Alexandria. She was only the second woman ever to fly like this. El Nadi, who had to stop flying after an accident, died in 2002 **aged** 94. However, her achievements **encouraged** other women **to have** a career in **flying**. For example, in 1944, Linda Masoud became the first woman teacher at the flying school and Aziza Moharam later became a **director** there.

VOCABULARY

woman\women (n.)	إمرأة / نساء	wealth (n.)	ثروة
nightingale (n.)	بلبل / عندليب	wealthy (adj.)	ثرى / غنى
appreciate (adj.)	يقدر	nurse (n.)	ممرضه
appreciation (n.)	تقدير	nursing (n.)	تمريض
appreciative (adj.)	مقدر / ممتدح	suit (v.)	يناسب
appreciable (n.\v.)	معقول	suitable (adj.)	مناسب
argue (v.)	يجادل / يناقش	suitably (adv.)	بطريقة مناسبة
argument (n.)	جدال	suitability (n.)	مناسبة / ملائمة
argumentative (adj.)	جدلى	effect (n.)	أثر / تأثير
award (n.\v.)	جائزة / يمنح جائزة	effective (adj.)	مؤثر / فعال
government (n.)	حكومة	abroad (adv.)	خارج البلاد
govern (v.)	يحكم	pilot (n.)	طيار
governor (n.)	حاكم	co-pilot (n.)	مساعد طيار
governorate (n.)	محافظة	airport (n.)	مطار
positive (adj.)	ايجابى	flight (n.)	رحلة جوية / هروب
positively (adv.)	بايجابية	flying (n.)	طيران
positivity (n.)	ايجابية	fly-flew-flown (v.)	يطير
respect (n.\v.)	احترام / يحترم	parents (n.)	والدين
respected (n.)	محترم (لعمله)	secretary (n.)	سكرتيرة
respectable (adj.)	محترم (اخلاقيا)	lessons (n.)	دروس
respectful (adj.)	يظهر الاحترام	licence (n.)	رخصة
role (n.)	دور	license (v.)	يرخص
culture (n.)	ثقافة	solo (adj.\adv.)	فردى / بفردية
cultural (adj.)	ثقافى	soloist (adj.)	عازف فردى
society (n.)	مجتمع	race (n.)	سباق
poems (n.)	قصائد	international (adj.)	دولى
literature (n.)	ادب	achievements (n.)	انجازات
improve (v.)	يحسن	achieve (v.)	ينجز
improvement (n.)	تحسين	career (n.)	حياة مهنى
position (n.)	وضع / مكانة	director (n.)	مخرج / مدير
meetings (n.)	اجتماعات / لقاءات	impression (n.)	انطباع / انبهار
encourage (v.)	يشجع	impress (v.)	يبهر
encouragement (n.)	تشجيع	impressive (adj.)	مبهر
daughter (n.)	ابنه	impressed (adj.)	منبهر
son (n.)	ابن	remember (v.)	يتذكر
get (v.)	يحصل / يصل	reasons (n.)	اسباب
successful (adj.)	ناجح	determination (n.)	تصميم
degree (n.)	درجة علمية	determined (adj.)	مصمم / عازم
join (v.)	يلتحق / ينضم	train (v.)	يدرّب / يتدرب
staff (n.)	هيئة موظفين / عاملين	introduce (v.)	يقدم
employ (v.)	يوظف	cleanliness (n.)	نظافة عامة
teaching (n.)	تدريس	hygiene (n.)	نظافة شخصية
inspector (n.)	موجه / مفتش	equipment (n.)	معدات (لا تعد)

حروف جر Prepositions

degree in	شهادة فى	graduate from	يتخرج من
encourage...to	يشجع أن	write on	يكتب عن / على
argue for	يجادل من أجل	effect...on	أثر على
at the age of...	فى عمر.....	in control of	مسئول عن
in charge of	مسئول عن	pay for	يدفع مقابل
suitable for	مناسب لـ	pay to	يدفع لـ / لى
take up	يشغل حيز/منصب	grow up	يكبر / يتربى
popular with	محبوب لدى	late for	متأخر على

تعبيرات Expressions

Arab culture	الثقافة العربية	a respected teacher	مدرس محترم (لعملة)
The Arab world	العالم العربى	personal life	حياة شخصية
Arabic language	اللغة العربية	a flying school	مدرسة طيران
join a university	يلتحق بالجامعة	a pilot's licence	رخصة طيار
the Egyptian society	المجتمع المصرى	wounded soldiers	جنود جرحى
get a good education	يحصل على تعليم جيد	expressing enthusiasm	التعبير عن الحماس
as a result	كنتيجة	be known as....	معروف كـ
university staff	موظفى الجامعة	the British government	الحكومة البريطانية
research assistant	باحث مساعد	international race	سباق دولى
a government inspector	موجه/مفتش حكومة	introduce new ideas	يقدم افكار جديدة

Expressions with Get

Get – got – got \ gotten

1- get = have

Ex: Aisha's mother encouraged her daughter to get a good education.

2- get = buy

Ex: We got a new TV from the shops.

3- get = catch

Ex: I'm going to get the 11.30 train to Cairo.

4- get = understand

Ex: Do you get what I mean?

5- get = arrive

Ex: How are you getting home this evening?

6- get = become

Ex: It's getting very hot outside.

7- get = receive \ obtain

Ex: I got an email from my friend this morning.

8- get = make \ persuade

Ex: He got his sister to help him with his homework.

9- get = bring \ fetch

Ex: Go and get a doctor.

10- get + meal = prepare

Ex: I must get home and get a cup of coffee.

11- get + sth + P.P = done

Ex: I must get my hair cut.

12- get + bus\train...etc = take

Ex: We are going to be late_ Let's get a taxi.

13- get = move\ travel

Ex: The bridge was destroyed so we couldn't get across.

Definitions تعريفات

1- argue for (جدالى argumentative - مناقشة\جدال argument) يجادل - يناقش

- To explain why something should be done.

2- appreciate (بتقدير appreciatively - ممتن/شاكر appreciative - تقدير appreciation) يقدر

- like the good qualities or value of something.

3- award (يمنح جائزة / جائزة)

- give a prize to someone who has achieved something.

4- government (محافظة governorate - حاكم governor - يحكم govern) حكومة

- the group of people who control a country or state.

5- positive (سلبى passive - بسلبية negatively - ايجابية positivity - ايجابى positively) ايجابى

- to have a good effect.

6- role (n.) (قاعدة rule - يلعب دور play a role) دور

- The position that someone has in an activity or situation.

7- respected (محترم respectful - محترم respectable - يحترم respect) محترم

- admired by many people because of achievements, skills etc.

8- career (انطلق/ اسرع career) حياة مهنية

- a job or profession that you have been trained for and intend to do for a long time.

9- be in charge of (قمة/ مسؤولية/ ثن charge) مسئول عن

- To be the person who is responsible for something or someone.

10- director (يوجه direct - اتجاه/ توجيه direction) مدير / مخرج

- someone controls or manages a company, organization or activity.

11- impressive (يبهر impress - إنبهار/ انطباع impression) مبهر

- Making you admire something.

12- licence (يرخص license) رخصة

- An official document that gives permission to do something.

13- nursing (حضانة nursery - ممرض - ممرضة nurse) تمريض

- The job of looking after people who are ill.

14- solo (عازف منفرد soloist - بطريقة فردية solo) فردى

- done on your own, without help from another person.

15- suitable (يناسب/ يلائم suit - ملائمة suitably - ملائمة suitability) مناسب

- Right in a particular situation.



- ▶ **job** [وظيفة (إسم يعد)]
- ▶ **work** يعمل / عمل (لا تعد)
- ▶ **a work\works** عمل فنى (إسم يعد)
- ▶ **profession** مهنة (تحتاج لتعليم وتدريب خاص مثل التدريس والطب)
- ▶ **occupation** مهنة / عمل
- ▶ **career** حياة مهنية
- ▶ **vocation** مهنة (تشعر وكأنك خلقت لها)

Ex: My father's job is a teacher.

Ex: My father works in a school.

Ex: There are a lot of works in this museum.

Ex: Teaching and medicine are difficult professions.

Ex: you should write about your occupation in your CV.

Ex: My father spent most of his career as a teacher.

Ex: Teaching isn't just a job to her- it's her vocation.

- ▶ **respected (adj.)** يحظى بالاحترام والإعجاب بسبب عمله أو إنجازاته
- ▶ **respectable (adj.)** محترم (يتصرف بطريقة مقبولة اجتماعيا وأخلاقيا)
- ▶ **respectful (adj.)** يظهر الاحترام لـ
- ▶ **be respected for.....** □ محترم لـ

Ex: He is one of the most respected managers.

Ex: He comes from a respectable family.

Ex: We should be respectful towards elderly people.

Ex: He is respected for his good behaviour.

- ▶ **aboard** على متن / ظهر السفينة / الطائرة / القطار
- ▶ **abroad** خارج البلاد

Ex: The flight attendant welcomed us aboard.

Ex: He decided to travel abroad to earn his living.

- ▶ **solo** منفرد / فردي / عمل فردي
- ▶ **individual** شخصي / فردي (متعلق بالفرد)

Ex: Amy Johnson made many solo flights.

Ex: Team work is better than individual work.

- ▶ **flight** رحلة جوية / هروب
- ▶ **flying** طيران

Ex: The flight from Cairo to Dubai takes three hours.

Ex: I don't like travelling by planes. I hate flying.

- ▶ **appreciative (of sth)** ممتدح / مقدر / ممتن
- ▶ **appreciable** معقول / ممكن ادراكه

Ex: My parents are always appreciative of my work.

Ex: Tea and coffee contain appreciable amounts of caffeine.

Language Functions

Expressing enthusiasm التعبير عن الحماس:

- That's really great news, isn't it?
- I'm really enthusiastic about it.
- I can't wait to start.
- What a great idea.

Relative Pronouns

ضمائر الوصل

ضمائر الوصل هي الضمائر التي تستخدم لربط جملتين وضمائر الوصل هي:

ضمير وصل بمعنى الذي / التي يحل محل الفاعل أو المفعول العاقل ويتبعه فعل أو فاعل ولا يسبق بحرف جر ولكن يمكن ان يأتي حرف الجر في اخر الجملة التي تليه.

Who

S. + who + S.+V. | V. + Obj.

Ex: Merna is the girl **who** won the prize.

Ex: This is the boy **who** I met yesterday.

Ex: This is the boy **I met** yesterday.

لاحظ انه يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل اذا حل محل مفعول كما في المثال السابق.

ضمير وصل يحل محل المفعول العاقل فقط ويتبعه فاعل وفعل ويمكن ان يأتي قبله حرف جر

Whom

♥ **S. + whom + S.**

♥ **S. + Prep. \whom + S. | V.**

Ex: Sahar **whom** you met last week is my fiancée.

Ex: The man **whom** I lived with was honest. =

Ex: The man with **whom** I lived was honest.

تحل محل الفاعل أو المفعول الغير عاقل :

Which

Ex: Eman bought a mobile **which** was expensive.

Ex: This is the article **which** Ali wrote.

المتفوقين فقط :

إذا اردنا اختيار حرف الجر الصحيح الذي يسبق **which** نحدد الكلمة التي حلت محلها **which** ثم نختار حرف الجر الذي يناسب تلك الكلمة.

Ex: Dr Aisha used to go with him to **meetings**, at **which** she learned to read and write.

ملاحظة هامة: يمكن استخدام **that** بدلا من **who/ which / whom** ولكن لا تستخدم **that** بعد حروف الجر او الكوما ,.....,

Ex: Ali is the surgeon **that** cured the patient.

Ex: This is the girl **that** he saved.

Ex: The man **that** I lived with was honest.

ولكن يوجد بعض الحالات التي يجب ان نستخدم فيها (that) وليست **which**

١ - اذا جاء في الجملة اي من الكلمات الاتية:

all, any, one, some, everything, only, many, much, few

Ex: I gave him all news **that** I had.

Ex: Ahmad is the only pupil **that** got the full mark.

٢ - مع الدرجة الثالثة من المقارنة (التفضيل)

Ex: Samy is the tallest man **that** I have ever seen.

٣- اذا جاء في الجملة عاقل وغير عاقل

Ex: Ali wrote about the people and the books **that** he liked.

٤- ومع التعبيرات الاتية.

What really ----- is / was that-----

The thing that----- is / was that-----

Ex: **What really** pleases me is **that** he gets high marks.

Ex: **The thing that** annoys his teacher is **that** he comes late.

Whose

تحل محل الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم ويمكن ان تسبق بحرف جر. (لا يتبعها فعل)

S. (شيء مملوك للمالك) + whose + (مالك) S.

Ex: I know a boy **whose** father is an engineer.

Ex: Ayman is a man **whose** father is a doctor.

Ex: Marwa **in whose** car we travelled is my friend.

Ex: Residents **whose** stay has ended must renew it.

Where

تحل محل المكان ومعناها حيث ولا يأتى قبلها او بعدها حرف جر. (لا يأتى بعدها فعل)

Ex: This is the house **where** we live.

Ex: A school is the place **where** we learn.

where = in which / at which ملاحظة هامة :

Ex: This is the house **where** we live.

Ex: This is the house **in which** we live. = This is the house **which** we live **in**.

When

تحل محل الوقت أو الزمن ولا يأتى قبلها او بعدها حرف جر. (لا يأتى بعدها فعل)

Ex: Ramadan is the month **when** we fast.

Ex: Friday is the day **when** we don't go to school.

when = in / on / at which ملاحظة هامة :

Ex: July is the month **when** he was born.

Ex: July is the month **in which** he was born. = July is the month **which** he was born **in**.

ملاحظات هامة على ضمائر الوصل :

(1) يوجد نوعان من شبه الجمل الموصولة او ما يسمى (relative clauses)

أ- النوع الأول يعطينا معلومة هامة او ضرورية عن الشخص / الشيء أي تحدد ولا يمكن حذفها.

Ex: The woman **who helped me** is a nurse.

Ex: The supermarket **which Miss Dina works for** sells fresh vegetables.

وفي هذا النوع لا نستخدم (,)

ب- النوع الثاني وهو لا يعطينا معلومات هامة او ضروري بل معلومة شائعة ويمكن حذفها

Ex: Paris, **which is very big**, is the capital of France.

Ex: Our teacher, **who lives in Cairo**, is very patient.

ونلاحظ هنا أنه تم وضع الـ (,) ولا نستخدم (that)

(2) يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل **who \ which** والفعل ونستخدم **V-ing** بدلا منه وتسمى هذه القاعدة بإسمر الفاعل.

(لا يأتى فعل به **ing** بعد ضمائر الوصل)

.....who \ which + Verb =V-ing.....

Ex: This is the boy **who won** the medal. = This is the boy **winning** the medal.

(3) يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل **who \ which** وفعل **to be** في حالة المبنى للمجهول ونستخدم بدلا منه **P.P** للفعل وتسمى هذه القاعدة بإسمر المفعول . (لا يأتى **P.P** بعد ضمائر الوصل)

.....+ who \ which + was \ were + P.P =P.P.....

Ex: Plays **that were written** by Shakespeare are read everywhere.

Ex: Plays **written** by Shakespeare are read everywhere.

(4) يأتى حرف الجر فقط أمام **which \ whom \ whose** .

Ex: The house **in which** I live is very large.

Ex: The man **about whom** we were talking is a doctor.

(5) يمكن أن نستخدم **who \ which** بعد التعبيرات الآتية .

It is \ was.....who \ that.....

Ex: It was a black jacket **that** I bought.

Ex: It was Garham Bill **who** invented the telephone.

(6) لاحظ الفرق بين **whose \ who's**

..... **whose** شئ مملوك للمالك **whose** مالك

.....who's + V-ing \ P.P..... (**who's = who is... \ has...**)

.....whose..... =who has..... =with.....

Ex: Dina **whose eyes** are blue is my friend. = Dina **who has blue eyes** is my friend.

(٧) هناك بعض الكلمات تستخدم كأسمر وفعل فإذا استخدمت كأسمر فإنها تسبق بـ **whose** :

S. + whose + name, stay, dreams, likes, play, use, water, plant, love + verb

Ex: People **whose likes** and dislikes are the same are good friends.

Ex: People **whose stay** ended should renew it.

(٨) يمكن ان نستخدم **what** كضمير وصل :

Ex: My father asked me about **what** I had bought.

Ex: A black jacket was **what** I bought.

Ex: **What** I bought was a black jacket.

(٩) الاسماء التى تشير الى جموع مثل team, family, company.....etc عندما نذكر فيها كمجموعة (ككل) فان الضمير الذى يحل محلها هو **it** وبالتالي فان ضمير الوصل الذى يحل محلها هو **which \ that** اما لو فكرنا فيها كأفراد فان الضمير الذى يعود عليها هو **they** وبالتالي فان ضمير الوصل الذى يحل محلها هو **who \ that**.

Ex: Professor Yacoub was part of the team **which** did the first heart transplant.

(١٠) هناك بعض الكلمات يمكن ان تشير الى مكان ويتبعها **where** (هنا يحل محل الكلمة فى الجملة الثانية **here\there** واحيانا اخرى تشير الى مبنى او كتلة وتتبع **which** (هنا يحل محلها **it**))

Ex: This is the house **where** I live

Ex: This is the house **which** my father built.

Ex: Assiut **where** I live is a big town.

Ex: Assiut **which** is located in middle Egypt is so big.

Ex: Professor Yacoub was part of the team **which** did the first heart transplant.

(١١) نستخدم **whom** للعاقل و **which** لغير العاقل مع التعبير الآتى:

All of \ Most of (persons\people) + whom

All of \ Most of (things) + which

Ex: Mary has three brothers, **all of whom** are married.

Ex: They asked me a lot of questions, **most of which** I couldn't answer.

وتنطبق تلك القاعدة مع :

none of \ neither of \ any of \ either of \ many of
each of \ Both of \ one of \ two of \ half of \ much of + persons\people + whom

none of \ neither of \ any of \ either of \ many of
each of \ Both of \ one of \ two of \ half of \ much of + things + which

Ex: Tom tried on three jackets, **none of which** fitted him.

Ex: They've got three cars, **two of which** they never use.

Ex: Suzy has a lot of friends, **many of whom** she was at school with.

(١٢) نستخدم **which** وليس **what** اذا كنا نشير الى جملة :

Ex: Riham couldn't come to the party, **which** was a pity.

Ex: The weather was very good, **which** we hadn't expected.

Homework

1) Choose the correct answer

1. My older brother has been a Maths prize from Cairo university.
a. rewarded b. awarded c. forwarded d. worked
2. Exercise can have a.....effect on your health and fitness.
a. position b. negative c. positive d. negation
3. Nurses have an important.....in looking after patients in a hospital.
a. rule b. role c. ruler d. roll
4. My parents alwaysit when I work hard at school.
a. approach b. preach c. approach d. reach
5. This new hospital was built with money from the.....
a. improvement b. development c. environment d. government
6. Mrs Nagwa is a.....teacher at the school. Her students usually do very well in their exams.
a. respectable b. respectful c. respected d. respect
7. The people that I help at the charity are always very.....of my work.
a. appreciate b. appreciative c. approachable d. appreciated
8. Young children are usually very.....towards their teachers.
a. respectable b. respectful c. respected d. respect
9. They are well behaved children who come from a.....family.
a. respectable b. respectful c. respected d. respect
10. How long has the King.....that country?
a. killed b. hit c. governed d. covered
11. It was a great football match. Both teams played very.....
a. badly b. aggressively c. negatively d. positively
12. The.....for winning the swimming race is a gold cup.
a. reward b. award c. ward d. word
13. The whole class clapped.....at the end of the internet speech. They had learned a lot.
a. appreciatly b. negatively c. partly d. sorrowly
14. A 14-year-old Japanese boy has become the youngest person to complete a.....voyage across the Pacific Ocean.
a. solo b. lonely c. mono d. alone
15. Before you can fly alone. You need to have a pilot's.....
a. degree b. qualification c. essence d. licence
16. My father spent all his.....working in a bank.
a. careen b. car c. career d. carer
17. Some films are not.....for young children.
a. suit b. suitable c. suitability d. suiting
18. That film was made by a famous.....
a. tractor b. driver c. direction d. director
19. My uncle is in.....of the Science Department in a secondary school.
a. charge b. control c. responsible d. change

20. The.....staff at the hospital work very hard to look after the patients.
a. office b. staff c. stuff d. stiff
21. Your grades are....., Jena.
a. impressed b. impressive c. impress d. pressed
22. The explorer did not go with anyone else to Antarctica. He went.....
a. slightly b. solo c. special d. lonely
23. In most countries, you need a/an.....to drive a car.
a. letter b. degree c. licence d. qualification
24. I told my little to read this book because it is.....for young children.
a. suitable b. employable c. reliable d. impossible
25. My cousin wants to have a.....in law.
a. mark b. work c. degree d. licence
26. My mother really.....it when my sisters and I cooked dinner for her.
a. apologized b. appreciated c. appealed d. thanked
27. Mr Shabana has an important.....in the government.
a. role b. roll c. rule d. root
28. The army captain is in.....of fifty soldiers today.
a. charge b. change c. core d. care
29. The palace is very..... It has more than 30 rooms.
a. impressed b. impressive c. improved d. industrial
30. Dr Shaker would like to take.....more work at the hospital but she doesn't.
a. on b. up c. over d. in
31. Dr Aisha Abd El-Rahman, is better knownsome people as Bint El-Shatei.
a. for b. to c. with d. by
32. She is one of the most famous people in Egyptian andculture.
a. Arab b. Arabic c. Arabian d. Arabs
33. During her life, she helped to improve women's.....in Egyptian society.
a. place b. post c. career d. position
34. Aisha's motherher daughter to get a good education .
a. discouraged b. couraged c. encouraged d. anchored
35. Dr Aisha was successful at school and went to Cairo University, where she studied Arabic language and
a. literate b. literature c. illiterate d. litter
36. She was awarded her degree in 1939 and then joined the university as a research assistant.
a. stiff b. stuff c. staff d. safe
37. In 1942, she was employed as a government for the teaching of Arabic literature.
a. inspector b. respector c. deselected d. inspection
38.the name Bint El Shatei, Dr Aisha wrote many books and articles.
a. Used b. Use c. To use d. Using
39. Dr Aisha was ateacher and taught at many universities across the Arab world.
a. respect b. respectful c. respected d. respectable

40. Her work hadmuch of her personal life.
a. taken in b. taken to c. taken for d. taken up
41. Her work is stilltoday
a. evaluated b. valued c. estimated d. appreciated
42. Florence Nightingale was born in 1820 into a family in Italy, but grew up and went to school in England.
a. wealth b. filthy c. wealthy d. miser
43. She decided that she wanted to be a nurse, although her family did not think that this was a job for their young daughter.
a. suitable b. unsuitable c. suit d. suiting
44. Florence's work in a London hospital was so
a. effect b. affect c. effective d. affective
45. The British government asked her to bethe nursing of wounded soldiers abroad.
a. charged with b. in charge with c. at charge by d. in charge of
46. In 1929, she was her pilot's licence.
a. warded b. rewarded c. awarded d. forwarded
47. Tois to clearly explain why you think something is true or should be done.
a. argue for b. argue with c. argue against d. argue by
48. A/an.....is the qualification given to someone who has successfully finished a university course.
a. agree b. disagree c. degree d. grade
49.means having a good or useful effect
a. Positive b. negative c. appositive d. expositive
50. A.....is the position that someone has in a situation or activity
a. rule b. ruler c. roller d. role
51. To be in charge of be responsible or in control of something
a. for b. to c. with d. by
52. To.....means to like the good qualities or value of something.
a. argue b. award c. appreciate d. approach
53. A.....is the group of people who control a country or state.
a. role b. governorate c. development d. government
54.means admired by many people because of achievements, skills etc.
a. Respect b. Respectful c. Respectable d. Respected
55. A.....is the position that someone has in an activity or situation.
a. rally b. rule c. role d. roll
56. A.....is an official document that gives permission to do something.
a. letter b. will c. licence d. qualification
57.is a job of looking after people who are ill.
a. Sterilizing b. Nursing c. Pressing d. Tracing
58. Dr Aisha died.....the age of 98.
a. in b. at c. of d. on
59. Dr Aisha spent most of her life.....her work.
a. in b. in c. of d. on

60. Ian email from my friend this morning.
a. got b. made c. did d. hit
61. How are you.....home this evening?
a. keeping b. getting c. having d. playing
62. The patient's condition is.....worse and worse.
a. keeping b. getting c. having d. playing
63. Dr Aisha helped to.....women's position in Egyptian society.
a. remove b. prove c. improve d. groove
64. Aisha's mother encouraged her to.....a good education.
a. gain b. keep c. get d. prove
65. Dr Aisha studied.....language and literature at Cairo University.
a. Arab b. Arabic c. Arabian d. Arabs
66. Dr Aisha was.....her degree in 1939.
a. got b. awarded c. rewarded d. left
67. After getting her degree in 1939, Dr Aisha joined the university staff as a.....assistant
a. researcher b. research c. search d. reach
68. Dr Aisha was a respected teacher and taught at many universities across the.....world.
a. Arab b. Arabic c. Arabian d. Arabs
69. Dr Aisha's work tookmuch of her personal life.
a. up b. after c. on d. for
70. Dr Aisha was employed as a government.....for teaching of Arabic literature.
a. director b. soloist c. inspector d. conductor
71. As a nurse, Florence Nightingale opened the first.....school in London.
a. nursery b. nurses c. nursing d. nurse
72. Lotfia El Nadi flew.....in an international race in 1933.
a. solo b. mono c. solely d. solemn
73. Lotfia El Nadi died in 200294.
a. ages b. age c. aged d. ageing
74. Lind Masoud was the first woman teacher at the.....school.
a. flight b. flying c. fly d. flapping
75. Florence nightingale.....new ideas into hospitals.
a. produced b. induced c. introduced d. deduced
76. Cleanliness and.....are very important in hospitals.
a. hygiene b. hyiena c. henna d. hydrogen
77. I can't tell you how happy that.....me.
a. does b. makes c. has d. plays
78. I'm really enthusiastic.....the match.
a. on b. after c. about d. for
79. A.....is a person who plays an instrument or performs alone.
a. monologist b. artist c. dentist d. soloist
80. They haved.....the firm to produce the drug.
a. advised b. licensed c. practised d. organised
81. She wanted to fly.....across the Atlantic.
a. solo b. soloist c. solidly d. solely

82. He.....her with his sincerity.
a. pressed b. dressed c. impressed d. obbressed
83. Yesterday my brother and I played a long game of tennis,.....made me very tired
a. which b. in which c. where d. that
84. The nurse,.....must look after young children, has worked at the hospital for ten years.
a. who b. whose c. that d. whom
85. The person.....does most of the cooking in our family is my mother.
a. who b. whose c. which d. whom
86. 1837 was the year.....Victoria became queen of Britain.
a. where b. when c. which d. what
87. I've just read a newspaper article.....the life of a famous woman is described in detail.
a. in where b. in when c. in which d. in that
88. My sister went to London University,.....she studied history.
a. what b. which c. where d. when
89. Lord of the Flies is a story.....a group os school boys are shipwrecked on an island.
a. for which b. to which c. which d. at which
90. She asked me where I had been,..... I replied, "I can't tell you."
a. for which b. to which c. which d. at which
91. Tomorrow, I'm going to a meeting.....we're going to discuss women's role in society.
a. for which b. to which c. which d. at which
92. They said something very cruel,..... I think they should apologise.
a. for which b. to which c. which d. at which
93. Cleopatra,.....was very beautiful, was the last pharaoh of Egypt.
a. who b. whose c. that d. whom
94. Women's Day,.....marks an important event in 1909, is on March 8th.
a. when b. where c. who d. which
95. Alexandria,.....my mother was born in, is in the north of Egypt.
a. when b. where c. who d. which
96. Abel- Tawab Yousef,.....books have been translated into many languages, is a famous children's writer.
a. who b. who's c. whom d. whose
97. I spoke to the worker.....my office.
a. cleaned b. cleaning c. who cleaning d. cleans
98. Tanta is the city.....my grandparents were born.
a. which b. that c. where d. what
99. This is the book.....my favourite character goes to the Arctic.
a. which b. that c. in which d. to which
100. Omar,.....mother is a scientist, always does well in the science tests.
a. whose b. who c. who's d. for whom
101. The shop,..... I visited last week, has some great souvenirs.
a. when b. where c. who d. which
102. I could not decide.....to wear to the wedding party.
a. which b. what c. that d. who
103. Jomana,.....is good friends with my sister, is really good at tennis.
a. who b. whose c. what d. which

104. This is a book.....the hero travels to space.
a. which b. where c. in which d. at which
105. Saturday,.....we always play football, is always a busy day for me.
a. that b. on which c. where d. what
106. We'd better decide.....we need to buy.
a. which b. that c. where d. what
107. That is the stadium.....we saw the cup final.
a. for which b. at which c. to which d. which
108. Adel is my friend.....brother won the poetry competition.
a. who b. who's c. whose d. that
109. Have you seen..... I bought from London?
a. which b. that c. where d. what
110. Alexandria,.....is Egypt's second biggest city, is a wonderful place for a holiday.
a. where b. when c. which d. that
111. He made a bad mistake.....he had to apologise.
a. in which b. to which c. for which d. which
112. Dr Mustafa,.....books are distinguished, teaches at Zagazig university.
a. who b. who's c. whose d. whom
113. This is the job.....people work in offices.
a. who b. which c. that d. whose
114. Residents.....stay have ended, must renew it.
a. who b. which c. that d. whose
115. Jailan, lives on my street, said there was a problem with the water.
a. whom b. who c. which d. whose
116. The man.....blue jacket is my brother.
a. who b. with c. that d. whose
117. These are the fields..... we grow corn.
a. in which b. for which c) that d. at which
118. Hans,..... car I borrowed last night, is from Holland.
a. whom b. whose c. who d. that
119. Five of the girls,..... names I don't remember, won awards in maths.
a. those b. which c. whom d. whose
120. The brother..... lives in, Moscow is coming home on Friday.
a. whom b. where c. that d. whose
121. Moscow,.....the smog from wildfires was thick, was having air quality problems.
a. where b. who c. that d. which
122. The meetings..... I attended today were long and boring.
a. to which b. where c. in where d. which
123. I have no idea.....was at the door.
a. who b. which c. where d. that
124. The restaurant..... Fady is having dinner has a great salad bar.
a. for which b. which c. where d. that
125. The girl.....has blue eyes is called Nancy.
a. who b. whose c. whom d. that
126. It that he will win the match.
a. thought b. is thought c. has thought d. thinks
127. The house.....my father bought is very expensive
a. when b. which c. where d. whose

128. pleased us that he got full marks.

- a. What b. That c. Which d. Who

129. Ali who broke my pen.

- a) This is b. It is c. she is d. He is

130. He is a kind of person.....likes and dislikes are strange to me.

- a. who b. which c. whose d. whom

131. Sahar smile is wonderful is my colleague.

- a. whose b. who c. who's d. with

132. The man.....yesterday is my father.

- a. you met b. you met him c. who you met him d. met

133. he had bought was not necessary for us.

- a. Who b. Which c. That d. What

134. is Zaki that scored the famous goal.

- a. He b. There c. Then d. It

135. The thing annoys her is his insolence.

- a. what b. who c. that d. when

136. Dr. Aisha's work.....today.

- a. is still appreciated b. is still appreciating
c. still appreciates d. still appreciating

137. Asmaa.....car we travelled is very helpful.

- a. who b. whose c. in whose d. in which

138. This is his bag,.....we found two guns and a bomb.

- a. which b. who c. inside which d. what

139. All the novels.....by Naguib Mahfouz are in bookshops.

- a. were written b. written c. wrote d. are written

140. The girl.....a doctor, helped me.

- a. whose b. who's c. whom d. that

141. Asmaa is often surprised by.....she hears.

- a. when b. that c. which d. what

142. I want to do a course at a study centre near..... I live.

- a. where b. to where c. which d. that

2) Read the following passage , then answer the questions:

What does so much technology do to a child's learning life? Are traditional forms of learning dying a slow death? Today, a teacher should be able to teach more than what Google has to offer. However, while we have technology, we have to be extra cautious as children are highly vulnerable to cyber crime. Students who have laptops must be only under strict vigilance. Instructions on cyber crime are organized to create awareness about the medium and its misuse.

In the 90s, grown-ups had to gradually convert to the digital age. Today, children seem born into it. Their handwriting and vocabulary have suffered. Parents complain that their child's handwriting is deteriorating. If students can read up everything online, they may stop going to school.

Another drawback of the net age is that students are at a loss if one doesn't understand content on the net or have a guide at hand. Technology can never replace a teacher. If pen and paper once defined school days, it's the stylus and touch screen that do so today. Perhaps the **two** can co-exist.

1. Students still go to school because.....

- a. technology can never replace a teacher b. they find pleasure in the school court
c. learning is dying a slow death d. they improve their handwriting

2. Grown-up had to convert to their digital age.....
 a. temporarily b. slowly c. quickly d. cautiously
3. According to the passage, too much technology can.....a child's learning life.
 a. benefit b. harm c. provide d. improve
4. Cyber crimes are crimes that are committed.....
 a. at school b. on the internet c. at home d. in streets
5. Modern technology makes children's handwriting.....
 a. worse b. better c. clearer d. stronger
6.define the net age.
 a. pen and paper b. stylus and touch screen
 c. school and teacher d. paper and papyrus
7. According to the passage, when is a child's handwriting deteriorating?

8. How should a teacher adapt to technology you think?

9. What does the underlined 'two' refer to?

10. How do you think modern technology deteriorates a child's handwriting?

4) Finish the following dialogue:

- Shaza : Hi Meret! I'm doing a survey about(1)Can you help me?
- Meret : The most popular free-time activities! Of course yes.
- Shaza : (2).....?
- Meret : I think playing tennis, playing computer games and talking to friends are the most popular.
- Shaza : What do you think are the most popular outdoor activities?
- Meret : (3).....
- Shaza : (4).....?
- Meret : Going to the cinema and the stadium are my favourite places to go.
- Shaza : What are the most popular cultural activities?
- Meret : (5).....
- Shaza : Good. Thank you for your help.
- Meret : (6)

5) Write a paragraph of (120) words about ONE (1) only of the following:

- a) The role women play in society.
 b) A famous Egyptian woman you admire most.

Translation

6) a) Translate into Arabic :

1- Dr Aisha Abdel Rahman wrote under a pen name, Bin Al Shate'a, as a respect to the Egyptian customs and traditions at that time.

.....

.....

2- Everyone has the ability to be successful in life if he\she work hard.

.....

.....

b) Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English :

١- الأم مدرسة إن أعددتها أعددت شعبا طيب الاعراق .

.....

٢- لقد حققت المرأة إنجازات عديدة فى شتى مجالات المعرفة مما جعلها جزءاً لا يتجزأ من المجتمع.

.....

Unit 5

Emily Dickinson
"If I can stop"



LISTENING

Interviewer : In today's programme, we are looking at the poet Emily Dickinson. With me is the author Clare Lovell who has written a book which calls Emily the first modern poet. Clare, Emily Dickinson was born in 1830, so why do you call her modern?

Clare Lovell : Well traditionally, poems usually have three or more verses and in every verse, there are words that rhyme at the end of some of the lines. Today, modern poems do not always follow these rules. They may have either no words that rhyme, or words that partly rhyme, for example young and song. Many modern poets do not really follow any rules at all! But their poems work very well.

Interviewer : So did Emily Dickinson's poems break the usual rules?

Clare Lovell : Well they were certainly different to most poems at that time. Many of her poems had very short lines, no titles, and sometimes no punctuation!

Interviewer : So are her poems challenging to read?

Clare Lovell : No, they aren't. Most of them were changed by her publishers so that they are more like normal poems.

Interviewer : Tell me about her life.

Clare Lovell : When she was a child, she was good at both writing and playing the piano. But she was an unusual adult. She always wore white clothes and she spent nearly all her life at home, where she wrote her poems. She spent about half of her time writing poems, and the other half helping with the housework, as her mother was very ill. She had a few friends but she didn't like to see them often. She preferred to write long letters to each friend instead. She wrote a lot of poems, but most of them were not published until after she died in 1886.

Interviewer : Did she marry?

Clare Lovell : No. We think that two men might have asked her to marry them but she accepted neither of their offers.

Interviewer : Which of her poems is most famous?

Clare Lovell : That is difficult to say! Only a few of her poems were published when she was alive, but you can read all of her 1,800 poems today. My favourite poem is called **If I can stop**. It is about how important it is to help people in life. It's very moving.

Interviewer : That sounds lovely, I'm going to read that poem next. Thank you for your time.

Reading

"If I can stop"

If I can stop one heart from breaking,
I shall not live in vain;
If I can ease one life the aching,
Or cool one pain,
Or help one fainting robin
Unto his nest again,
I shall not live in vain.

Paraphrase:

In the poem, "if I can stop one heart from breaking" by Emily Dickinson, the poet says that she would not be selfish, and that she would go and help someone before their heart was to break. She talks about how if she could ease someones life the aching or cool someones pain and make them feel painless. An example of this would be in sentence 5. She would want to help the robin and put it back into its nest. Her deep sensitivity for welfare of others, even before personal self is the message conveyed in the poem. It is a message of kindness, a compassion that one human should afford another human without the need for display or drama. A life that is devoted to another's welfare is a life well lived.

VOCABULARY

poetry (n.)	شعر	ease (n.\v.)	راحة/يريح
poet (n.)	شاعر	nest (n.)	عش
poetic (adj.)	شعري	paraphrase (v.)	يعيد صياغة/ ينثر
poetically (adv.)	بطريقة شعرية	summarise (v.)	يلخص
poem (n.)	قصيدة	useful (adj.)	مفيد
verse (n.)	مجموعة ابيات	useless (adj.)	غير مفيد
rhyme (n.\v.)	قافية/ يتقافى	lighten (v.)	يخفف
rythem (n.)	جرس موسيقى	burdens (n.)	اعباء
challenge (n.\v.)	تحدى/ يتحدى	pain (n.)	الم
challenger (n.)	متحدى	painful (adj.)	مؤلم
challenging (adj.)	متطلب للتحدي	castle (n.)	قلعة
emotions (n.)	عواطف	asleep (adj.)	نائم
emotionally (adv.)	عاطفيا	ahead (adv.)	قدما/ للامام
laugh (v.)	يضحك	ashore (adv.)	تجاه الشاطئ
laughter (n.)	ضحك	along (adv.)	بطول / بجزاء
alive (adj.)	حي/ على قيد الحياة	awake (adj.)	مستيقظ
dead (adj.)	ميت	sad (adj.)	حزين
rules (n.)	قواعد	sadness (n.)	حزن
tradition (n.)	تقليد	happy (adj.)	سعيد
traditional (adj.)	تقليدي	happiness (n.)	سعادة
traditionally (adv.)	بطريقة تقليدية	novel (n.)	رواية
publish (v.)	ينشر (كتاب او رواية)	war (n.)	حرب
publisher (n.)	ناشر	peace (n.)	سلام
publication (n.)	نشر	rescue (v.)	ينقذ
break (n.\v.)	راحة/ يكسر	rescuer (n.)	منقذ
heart (n.)	قلب	passengers (n.)	ركاب
hurt (v.)	يؤذي	fine (v.)	يغرم
a child (n.)	طفل	half\halves (n.)	نصف/انصاف
children (n.)	اطفال	cafe (n.)	مقهى
childhood (n.)	طفولة	message (n.)	رسالة
unconscious (adj.)	فاقد الوعي	raw (adj.)	نئ/ خام
instead (adv.)	عوضا عن ذلك	staff (n.)	هيئة موظفين
engineer (n.)	مهندس	members (n.)	اعضاء
separate (n.\adj.)	يفصل/ مفصول	park (n.\v.)	منتزة/ يركن
tour guide (n.)	مرشد سياحي	tooth\teeth (n.)	سنة/ اسنان
tourist (n.)	سائح	dentist (n.)	طبيب اسنان
tourism (n.)	سياحة	sandstorm (n.)	عاصفة رملية
ticket (n.)	تذكرة	baker's (n.)	مخبز
museum (n.)	متحف	bite\bit\bitten (v.)	يعض
robin (n.)	طائر	fellow (n.)	رفيق
ache (n.\v.)	الم/ يؤلم	bones (n.)	عظام
faint (v.)	يغمى عليه	review (n.)	مقالة نقدية
In vain (n.)	دون جدوى	reviewer (n.)	ناقد

partly (adv.)	جزئيا	headache (n.)	صداع
success (n.)	نجاح	swimmers (n.)	سباحون
brown (n.)	بنى	advice (n.)	نصيحة
subject (n.)	موضوع	rocks (n.)	صخور
character (n.)	شخصية	song (n.)	اغنية
medicine (n.)	دواء	selfishness (n.)	انانية
skill (n.)	مهارة	moving (adj.)	محزن
drinks (n.)	مشروبات	T-shirt (n.)	قميص
words (n.)	كلمات	company (n.)	شركة / رفقة
café (n.)	مقهى	angleworm (n.)	دودة الارض

Prepositions حروف جر

walk across	يسير عبر	on the beach	على البلاج
walk along	يسير بطول / بجزاء	on the internet	على الانترنت
walk up to	يسير لاعلى الى	on TV	فى التلفاز
rhyme with	يتقافى مع	in the countryside	فى الريف
great for	عظيم لـ	on the shelf	على الرف
write about	يكتب عن	in vain	دون جدوى
for a short time	لوقت قصير	stop....from	يمنع....من
wake up	يستيقظ	travel around	يسافر حول
come down	ينزل	get to	يصل الى
depend on	يعتمد على	at the baker's	فى المخبز

Expressions تعبيرات

traditional poems	قصائد تقليدية	a perfect holiday	اجازة كاملة
follow the rules	يتبع القواعد	lose matches	يخسر مباريات
colourful clothes	ملابس ملونة	win matches	يفوز بمباريات
play the piano	يعزف البيانو	blond hair	شعر اشقر
accept an offer	يقبل عرض	positive comments	تعليقات ايجابية
ease one's life	يريح حياة انسان	make noise	يحدث ضوضاء
cool one's pain	يخفف الم انسان	a lovely poem	قصيدة محبوبة
waste his life	يهدر حياته	leave with a smile on his face	يغادر بابتسامة على وجهه
feel weak	يشعر بالضعف	turn right\left	يستدير يمينا / يسارا
feel with the heart	يشعر بالقلب	become unconscious	يصبح غير واعي
ease the pain	يريح / يخفف الالم	make sure	يتأكد
a plane crash	تحطم طائرة	easier to read	اسهل فى القراءة
a football team	فريق كرة قدم	follow advice	يتبع النصائح
In other words	بمعنى اخر	bite....in halves	يقطع... الى نصفين
A three-star hotel	فندق ثلاث نجوم	Would you rather...?	هل تفضل.....؟
go ashore	يذهب تجاه الشاطئ		

Expressions with Break

Break – broke – broken

1- break the rules

يخالف القواعد

Ex: Emily Dickinson's poems often broke the rules.

2- break someone's heart

يحزن قلبا

Ex: It broke my heart to hear about the earthquake.

3- break the record

يكسر الرقم القياسي

Ex: He walked up the mountain so quickly that he broke the record.

4- break a promise

يخلف وعده

Ex: I never break a promise: I said I'd help you, so I will help you.

5- break the law

يخالف القانون

Ex: You can go to prison if you break the law.

6- break the ice

يكسر حدة الجمود / يطفئ الجو

Ex: I broke the ice before the meeting as everyone was nervous.

7- break loose\free

يهرب

Ex: The cattle had broke loose during the night.

8- break for lunch\ coffee

راحة من اجل الغداء

Ex: We broke for lunch at about 12:30.

Adjectives and Adverbs starting with A صفات وظروف تبدأ بحرف الـ

1- Adjectives starting with A:

asleep, awake, alive, abnormal, active, aggressive, afraid, affluent, absolute, acute, adult, amateur, aware, alert, awful

Ex: Please keep quiet, the baby is asleep.

Ex: My grandfather is still alive.

Ex: He is not sleeping, he is awake.

2- Adverbs starting with A:

ashore, ahead, along, always, around, aside, away, abroad, aboard, above, about, across, alike, all, almost, alone, after

Ex: We walked along the beach and watched the swimmers.

Ex: The boat went slowly because there were rocks ahead.

Ex: The flight attendant welcomed us aboard.



Summarising and paraphrasing

التلخيص وإعادة الصياغة

To summarise or paraphrase you can use:

- What she's trying to say is that.....
- Can you paraphrase\ summarise that?
- I think I can summarise the (poem)
- I think that it means.....
- In other words.....
- To sum up.....

Definitions تعريفات

- 1 - robin** طائر أبو الحناء
- a small brown bird with an orange front.
- 2 - ache** ألم / يؤلم (headache- toothache- backache- stomach ache)
- pain
- 3 - faint** يغشى عليه
- to become unconscious for a short time.
- 4 - in vain** دون جدوى (مغرور vain)
- without success
- 5 - ease** يريح / راحة
- to make something less difficult.
- 6 - alive** على قيد الحياة
- living, not dead.
- 7 - challenging** متطلب للتحدى (challenge يتحدى / تحدى)
- interesting but difficult to do.
- 8 - moving** مؤلم
- making you feel strong emotions sadness.
- 9 - publisher** ناشر
- a person or company that produces books for people to buy.
- 10 - angle worm** دودة الأرض
- a long, thin animal, with no bones and no legs, that lives in soil.
- paraphrase** ينشر الابيات / يعيد صياغة
- to write or say something in a shorter, simpler way.



- **everyone** كل واحد (للأشخاص فقط)
 ► **every one** كل واحد / واحدة (للأشخاص والأشياء)
Ex: Everyone enjoyed the party.
Ex: He is invited to lots of parties and he goes to every one.

- **pain** (n.) ألم (ألم حاد لا يمكن تحمله)
 (painfully مؤلم - painful متألما in pain - بالم)
 ► **ache** (n./v.) ألم / يؤلم (ألم غير حاد ويمكن تحمله)
 (toothache, backache, stomachache, headache, earache)
 ► **hurt** (v./adj.) يؤلم / يؤذى
Ex: He felt a sharp pain in his knee.
Ex: Her eyes ached from lack of sleep.
Ex: Don't play with that knife_ you could hurt yourself.



Grammar

- Distributives / المقسمات

المجزئات / الموزعات / المقسمات هي:

all, both, half, each, every, either, neither.

1- all كل

- وهي تستخدم لتصف عدد كامل من المجموعة وهي تبين انه لا شيء باقى او مستبعد من المجموعة لاي سبب.
- وهي تستخدم قبل الاسماء التي تعد او لا تعد ويأتى بعدها فعل مفرد اذا تبعت باسم لا يعد ويأتى بعدها فعل جمع اذا اتى بعدها اسم يعد جمع.

☛ **All + uncountable noun + singular verb.....**

Ex: All my money is at home.

☛ **All + plural countable noun + plural verb.....**

Ex: All my friends are helpful.

- عندما نستخدم اداة التعريف the بعد all فاننا نتحدث عن مجموعة معينة/ محددة ويمكن ان تتبع كلمة all بحرف الجر of او بدونة بلا اختلاف فى المعنى.

☛ **All \ All (of) + countable\ uncountable noun.....**

Ex: All\All of the students in this group are clever.

- ولكن اذا تبعت all بضمير فلا بد ان تتبع بـ of :

☛ **All + of + us\them\you...etc.**

Ex: Did he invite all of us to the party.

Ex: I called all of them before leaving the country.

2- half نصف

- وهي تستخدم للتحدث او الاشارة الى مجموعة او شيء مقسم الى نصفين.
- وهي تستخدم قبل الاسماء التي تعد او لا تعد ويأتى بعدها فعل مفرد اذا تبعت باسم لا يعد ويأتى بعدها فعل جمع اذا اتى بعدها اسم يعد جمع، ويمكن ان نستخدم بعدها of او لا بلا اختلاف فى المعنى

☛ **Half (of) + uncountable noun + singular verb.....**

Ex: Half (of) the cheese is on the table.

☛ **Half (of) + plural countable noun + plural verb.....**

Ex: Half (of) my friends are helpful.

- ولكن عند استخدام تعبير كمى بعد half فاننا لا نستخدم بعدها of وانما نستخدم اداة نكرة a\an

☛ **Half + a\an + kilometer\metre\litre\hour\lemon.....**

Ex: My house is half a kilometer from here.

Ex: Put half a lemon in each recipe.

3- both كلان

- وهي تستخدم لتشير الى زوج من الاشخاص او الاشياء ويأتى بعدها اسم جمع ويمكن ان نستخدم معها كلمة and

☛ **Both + plural noun + plural verb.....**

☛ **Both + noun + and + noun + plural verb.....**

Ex: Both my parents are beautiful.

Ex: Both Mai and Shorouk are clever.

كل 4- each

- وهى تستخدم امام الاسم المفرد الذى يعد عندما نفكر فى الاشياء او الناس بشكل منفصل.

☛ **Each + countable noun + singular verb.....**

Ex: *Each student was given a prize.*

وفى المثال السابق اردنا القاء الضوء بان كل طالب فى المجموعة اعطى جائزة.

- وهى يمكن ان تسبق الاسم الجمع المعداد ولكنها يجب ان تتبع بـ of :

☛ **Each + of (the) + plural noun + singular verb**

Ex: *Each of the students was given a prize.*

كل 5- every

- وهى تستخدم امام الاسم المفرد الذى يعد عندما نفكر فى الاشياء او الناس بشكل جماعى.

☛ **Every + countable noun + singular verb.....**

Ex: *Every student was given a prize.*

تذكر اننا لا نستخدم of بعد every

للمتفوقين : الفرق بين every و each :

١- نستخدم each لوصف او القاء الضوء على عضو فردى فى المجموعة لتمييزه وابرازه اما every فتستخدم للاشارة الى المجموعة كمجموعة من الافراد .

٢- يفضل استخدام every مع الاعداد الكبيرة و each مع الاعداد الصغيرة.

Ex: *There are four books on the table. Each book is a different colour.*

Ex: *Sahar loves reading. She has read every book in the library. (all the books)*

٣- يفضل استخدام each عند التحدث عن شيئين فقط:

Ex: *In a football match, each team has eleven players.*

٤- يفضل استخدام every عند التحدث عن عدد مرات حدوث الشئ (التكرار).

Ex: *There's a bus every ten minutes.*

٥- يمكن استخدام each بدون اسم بعدها ولكن لا يمكن استخدام every بدون اسم بعدها ويمكن ان تاتى each فى منتصف او اخر الجملة:

Ex: *None of the rooms was the same. Each was different.*

Ex: *These magazines cost ten pounds each.*

Ex: *The students were each given a book.*

٦- يفضل استخدام every اذا تبعت باسم لا يعد.

Ex: *He gave me every advice before I went for the climb.*

أيهما / أى منهما 6- either

- وهى تستخدم للتخيير او التفضيل بين شيئين او شخصين ويأتى بعدها اسم مفرد.

☛ **Either + singular noun + singular verb.....**

Ex: *Either parent is going to look for their son's bully.*

- وهى يمكن ان تسبق الاسم الجمع المعداد ولكنها يجب ان تتبع بـ of :

☛ **Either + of + plural noun + singular verb**

Ex: *I may buy either of these gifts.*

Ex: *Either of you can help me in this matter.*

Ex: *Either of the cars looks comfortable to me.*

- يمكن استخدام or مع either :

..... **either + + or +**

Ex: Either Amany or Sama will get the job.

Ex: I can visit you either on Monday or Friday.

6- neither ولا اى منهما

- وهى تستخدم لنفى كلا الاحتمالين او الشئيين ويأتى بعدها اسم مفرد.

☛ **Neither + singular noun + singular verb.....**

Ex: Neither answer is correct

Ex: Neither boxer was able to knock the other out.

- وهى يمكن ان تسبق الاسم الجمع المعداد ولكنها يجب ان تتبع بـ of :

☛ **Neither + of + plural noun + singular verb**

Ex: Neither of them played well.

Ex: Neither of you has qualified this exam to go ahead.

- يمكن استخدام nor مع either :

☛ **..... neither + + nor +**

Ex: Neither the first movie nor the second movie sounds exciting.

Ex: I like neither of the shirts.

Homework

1) Choose the correct answer

1. My cousin wrote a novel but hasn't found a.....yet.
a. minister b. preacher c. polisher d. publisher
2. The film about the war was very..... A lot of people cried at the end.
a. proving b. improving c. moving d. removing
3. Although the plane crashed, rescuers were pleased to find all the passengers were...
a. live b. alive c. lively d. life
4. The walk across the mountains was beautiful but very.....
a. challenge b. challenger c. challenging d. challengely
5. I knew that Ahmed would not be late because he never.....a promise.
a. breaks b. keeps c. gets d. removes
6. In winter, we often see.....in the trees in the park.
a. ribbon b. robin c. bones d. robe
7. Hassan's tooth hurt all night and he went to the dentist because the.....did not stop today.
a. ageing b. aching c. baking d. making
8. It was very hot and busy in the market today and one tourist.....
a. fitted b. faded c. fainted d. painted
9. We ran to the station but it was in..... The train had already left.
a. veil b. vain c. pain d. value
10. It hurt when I hit my head on the shelf, but the pain soon.....
a. erased b. eased c. pleased d. raised
11. If you drive too fast, you will.....the law. The police might fine you.
a. get b. obey c. break d. follow
12. The tourists left the boat and went.....for the afternoon.
a. shore b. shores c. ashore d. sure
13. My father drove the car slowly because we saw there was a sandstorm.....
a. ahead b. above c. along d. alive
14. Some of the fish in the market are still....., so they are very fresh.
a. ahead b. above c. along d. alive
15. It's late, but the children are still..... I can hear them talking.
a. ahead b. awake c. asleep d. able
17. To get to the bank, walk.....this road and turn right at the baker's
a. ahead b. above c. along d. aboard
18. Don't make too much noise. The baby is.....
a. ahead b. awake c. sleep d. asleep
19. It.....Amira's heart when her best friend moved to Dubai.
a. got b. broke c. stroke d. gave
20. The football team did not lose for 50 matches and.....a record.
a. broke b. missed c. lost d. smashed
21.means making you feel strong emotions, especially sadness.
a. Giving b. Moving c. Walking d. Driving

22. A.....is a person or a company that produces books for people to buy.
a. polisher b. politician c. publican d. publisher
23.means not dead.
a. Alive b. amateur c. Asleep d. Active
37.means interesting but difficult to do.
a. Changing b. Shillining c. Shaking d. Challenging
38. The word *raw*.....with the word *saw*.
a. rhymes b. plays c. breaks d. fails
39. An *angle*.....is a long , thin animal with no bones and no legs, that lives in soil.
a. warm b. worm c. warn d. norm
40.is another word for a man or a boy.
a. Follow b. Fellow c. Faul d. Fill
41. I don't think that tree is.....any more. All its leaves are brown.
a. live b. life c. alive d. alone
42. Ali said that he would be here at midday and there he is. He never.....a promise.
a. takes b. breaks c. makes d. keeps
43. We walked a really long way to get to the shop, but it was in..... It had already closed.
a. veil b. vein c. vain d. view
44. Don't drink too much coffee or it will keep you.....at night.
a. wake b. woken c. asleep d. awake
45. The maths test was very.....so nobody did very well at it.
a. challenging b. easy c. uncertain d. promising
46. We were very tired after the sports competition and we were all.....by nine o'clock.
a. along b. ahead c. awake d. asleep
47. Ashraf is a good student. He never.....the rules.
a. becomes b. blocks c. follows d. breaks
48. To break someone's heart means to.....someone very unhappy.
a. makes b. breaks c. follows d. gets
49.interesting because it needs a lot of skill to do.
a. Changing b. Shillining c. Shaking d. Challenging
37. You can go to prison if youthe law.
a. follow b. break c. respect d. wear
38. Many modern poems do not.....the rules of traditional poems.
a. fellow b. follow c. feel d. fail
39. To.....means to become unconscious for a short time.
a. fade b. faint c. paint d. fit
40.vain means without success.
a. On b. At c. Of d. In
41. To.....means to make something less difficult.
a. erase b. phase c. ease d. arise
42. A.....is a small brown bird with an orange front.
a. robin b. ribbon c. ripen d. robe

43. Birds lives in.....
a. nests b. nets c. nuts d. chests
44. To.....means to write or say something in a shorter, simpler way.
a. parallel b. phase c. paraphrase d. paragraph
45. The best and most beautiful things in the world must be.....with the heart.
a. seen b. touched c. felt d. eaten
46. It was so hot inside the room that I thought I was going to.....
a. fill b. fake c. fade d. faint
47. I ran ten kilometers yesterday and now my legs is.....!
a. aching b. fainting c. easing d. eating
48. Mona has a bad headache but this medicine should.....the pain.
a. ache b. faint c. ease d. erase
49. We walked up to the castle in..... It was closed.
a. van b. vain c. vein d. veil
50. We walked.....the beach and watched the swimmers.
a. long b. a long c. along d. longing
51. The boat went slowly because there were rocks.....
a. head b. ahead c. along d. abroad
52. Our teacher asked us to.....Emily Dickinson's poem.
a. summer b. surprise c. summeraise d. modernise
53. Emily Dickinson liked to wear.....clothes.
a. colourful b. colouring c. colours d. color
54. She spent a lot of her time travelling.....the country.
a. round b. around c. about d. circle
55. My grandmother is not dead. She is still.....
a. along b. asleep c. awake d. alive
56. Do you think this poem have a.....?
a. letter b. massage c. message d. fax
57. I always.....the advice of my parents.
a. break b. follow c. faint d. brake
58. He is a great..... All his poems are easy to read and understand.
a. actor b. publisher c. novelist d. to poet
59. To faint means to become.....
a. unconscious b. conscious c. alert d. active
60. I always prefer to stay in a five-.....hotels.
a. star b. stars c. star's d. stars'
61. We walked at two hotels on the internet and.....of them would be great for a holiday.
a. neither b. either c. half d. every
62.of the five tourists from the north of Europe had blond hair.
a. Every b. Both c. Each d. Half
63. Tarek loves tennis and watches.....match on television.
a. every b. both c. each d. half
64. There were two photos of me on my cousin's phone but I liked.....of them.
a. every b. both c. each d. half
65. My sister bought two new skirts and.....of them are long and green.
a. every b. both c. each d. half
66. The film was very boring and.....of the people left before the end.
a. every b. both c. each d. half

67. You can stay in.....the three-star Sand Hotel or the two-star Blue Hotel.
a. neither b. both c. each d. either
68. Both hotels have a café for breakfast and.....room has a fridge and TV.
a. each b. both c. all d. half
69.our staff members are trained to make sure that you have a perfect holiday.
a. Every b. Each c. All d. Both
70. We want.....visitor to our hotels to leave with a smile on their face!
a. all b. every c. both d. either
71. Lina has two brothers, but they are not good at basketball because.....tall.
a. either is b. each are c. neither is d. neither are
72. Hamdi wants to study.....English or history at university. He's not sure.
a. either b. both c. neither d. half
73. My mother gave.....child at the part a small present.
a. all b. each c. either d. both
74. Our school is.....kilometre from my house.
a. half of b. half a c. half of a d. half
75.the rice that you need is in the cupboard.
a. All b. Both c. Either d. Each
76. Nagwa is enjoying her new job because.....day of the week is different.
a. both b. all c. every d. either
77. Grandmother says that my brothers and I can.....take a cake from the kitchen.
a. each b. every c. both d. either
78. There are two restaurants by the park and they are.....very good.
a. all b. either c. each d. both
79. I don't like.....of the T-shirts.
a. neither b. either c. every d. all
80. I need to be good at.....speaking and writing English to get the job.
a. neither b. either c. every d. both
81.engineer in the factory was given a separate job to do.
a. All b. Both c. Each d. Neither
82.the students in my class speak English very well.
a. All b. Both c. Each d. Neither
83. I was very hungry, so I had.....the cheese and the chicken sandwich!
a. neither b. either c. both d. half
84. The cake was cut into six pieces, so three of us ate.....of it and we kept the other three pieces until later.
a. both b. all c. half d. every
85. The teacher told the class that.....student had done very well that year.
a. all b. both c. every d. half
86. I was offered tea or coffee, but I had.....of them because I don't like hot drinks.
a. neither b. either c. both d. all
87. The tour guide gave.....tourist a ticket to enter the museum.
a. all b. each c. both d. half
88. My mother said I could have.....a cheese or a chicken sandwich.
a. neither b. either c. both d. all
89.the students in our class are from Cairo.
a. Both b. Either c. All d. Neither

90. Two men wanted to marry her, but she accepted.....of their offers.
a. both b. either c. neither d. all
91. She spent about.....of her time writing poems.
a. both b. all c. half d. neither
92. They may have.....no words that rhyme, or words that partly rhyme.
a. both b. all c. neither d. either
93. Poems usually have three or more verses and in.....verse, there are words that rhyme.
a. every b. either c. neither d. all
94. Emily spent nearly.....her life at home.
a. every b. both c. all d. neither
95. When Emily was a child, she was good at.....writing and playing the piano.
a. every b. both c. all d. neither
96. Emily preferred to write long letters to.....friend instead.
a. all b. both c. each d. half
97. My house is.....kilometre from here.
a. half b. half of c. half a d. half the
98. All Mona's money is at home, so.....her friends are helping her.
a. both b. all c. every d. each
99.answer is correct.
a. Both b. All c. Neither d. Half
100.the girls spoke well.
a. Each b. Each of c. Every d. Every of
101. Sara and I can go on either Friday or Saturday but.....of us can go on Sunday.
a. either b. neither c. every d. both
102. I don't like.....of the photos.
a. either b. neither c. all d. every
103. I like.....of the photos.
a. either b. neither c. both d. every
104.person has a role in society.
a. Both b. All c. Every d. Half
105. I gave each of my three brothers a card and.....my parents a present.
a. each b. half c. both d. all
106.student wears a uniform.
a. Each b. Each of c. All d. Both
107. Which shirt do you want?.....shirt will do.
a. neither b. both c. either d. all
108. Mother cooked special meals for.....us.
a. each of b. every of c. each d. every
109. I will take.....shirt, they are both good.
a. both b. all c. either d. neither
110. He gave me.....information I needed.
a. each b. every c. both d. neither
111. We go to the church.....Sunday.
a. each b. every c. all d. both

112. There are two pens on the desk, but.....of them is mine.

- a. either b. neither c. both d. all

113. The teacher talked to.....of the fifteen students while they were working.

- a. either b. every c. each d. both

114. The museum is open today and tomorrow, but I can't go on.....day.

- a. neither b. both c. either d. all

115. My parents.....have a mobile phone.

- a. all b. each c. every d. both

116. My father runs in the park.....day of the week.

- a. every b. all c. half d. either

2) Read the following passage , then answer the questions:

Hypnosis is one of the techniques that can be used for controlling people's minds. While in a deep trance, people can be told to do something at a specific time or at a certain signal. They can be told that they won't remember what has been said once out of the trance. This is called a post-hypnotic suggestion. It is still uncertain whether a subject can be made to carry out an action that otherwise would be acceptable in that person's mind. Yet another technique is called brainwashing.

Brainwashing entails forcing people to believe something, usually something false, by continually telling them or showing them evidence that it is supposedly true and preventing them from thinking about it properly or considering other evidence. Brainwashing can take extreme forms. For example, brainwashing can be done by first causing a complete breakdown of individuals through acts such as starving them, preventing them from sleeping, intimidating them, and keeping them in a state of constant fear. When the individuals lose their sense of reality, new ideas can be planted in their minds.

1. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to

- a. people b. person c. individual d. ideas

2. The underlined word 'entail' means.....

- a. consist with b. consist of c. consist with d. consist

3. The writer wants us to be.....

- a. tolerant b. aggressive c. greedy d. critics

4. The word degrade means.....

- a. to lower in dignity b. to give prestige c. to give position d. to honour

5. Judging others makes the one who judges feels.....

- a. weak b. powerful c. miserable d. sad

6. At schools, students compare themselves to their.....

- a. peers b. families c. celebrities d. teachers

7. According to this passage, how can we control people's mind?

8. What does brainwashing entail?

9. Do you agree with the technique of brainwashing? Why?

10. Where should young adults accept the other's differences?

4) Finish the following dialogue:

Tamer is phoning a hotel receptionist to book a room.

Receptionist : Grand Hotel Good morning. Can I help you ?

Tamir : Yes, I).....?

Receptionist : Certainly, 3).....?

Tamir : Three nights.

Receptionist : 3).....?

Tamir : Single please

Receptionist : Very well. 4).....?

Tamir : Tamir Ali, 30 Mohammed Ali Street, Alex. By the way, 5).....?

Receptionist : For bed and breakfast, that's L.E. 35 a night.

Tamir : 6).....

Receptionist : Yes, that's everything. There no extra charges.

Tamir : Thank you.

Receptionist : You're welcome

5) Write a paragraph of 120 words about ONE (1) only of the following:

- The qualities of a good teacher.
- Your ideal teacher.

Translation

6) a) Translate into Arabic :

1- The best and most beautiful things in the world cannot be seen or even touched_they must be felt with the heart.

2- No one is useless in this world who lightens the burdens of another.

b) Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English :

١- كل من أحمد وأمير ماهران فى إعادة صياغة القصائد الشعرية .

٢- الشعر الحر هو الذى لا يرتبط بنظام القوافى.

To love is so
startling it
leaves little
time for
anything
else.

- Emily Dickinson

Beauty crowds me till I
die. Beauty, mercy
have on me! Yet if I
expire to-day Let it be
in sight of thee!

Emily Dickinson

MORNING
WITHOUT YOU IS
A DWINDLED
DAWN.

QUOTEHD.COM

Emily Dickinson
American Poet

Hope is the thing with
feathers, that perches in
the soul, and sings the
tune without words, and
never stops at all.



Work-life balance

LISTENING



Listen to some freelance workers talking about their work:

Speaker 1 : I'm a freelance writer. I have just had my first child, so I'm too busy to go to work every day. What I like about freelance work is that you can choose how much work you want to do. Before my son was born, I worked very hard. Sometimes I worked so hard that I had to work until late at night. Now, I'm only doing a few hours of work a day. Later; as my son gets older; I'll increase the amount of work that I do. The problem with being a freelance worker is that you don't always get regular work. There are times when you can't work hard enough to live comfortably. Also, it can be hard to make money and look after my family.

Speaker 2: When I was younger, I worked such long hours that I didn't have any time to myself. The best thing about freelance work is that you can choose your working hours. When you don't have to go to an office each day, you can manage your time. Because you're working for yourself, you can make your own timetable. But of course it is very important that you get the work done on time. You must meet the deadlines.

Speaker 3: When I moved away from the city I was working in, I had to make a difficult decision: either to find a new job, or to carry on working for the same company, but freelance. I'm a book designer, so my job is one which can be done almost anywhere. All I need is a computer and the internet, and I can do my job wherever I want to. I need to travel to meetings, but I can take my work with me. When you're a freelance worker, you can choose where you want to do your job.

Speaker 4: I'm a freelance project manager for a big organisation. I work on lots of different projects. The best thing about working freelance is that I can choose exactly which projects to take on. I find my own clients, so I usually look for the ones that provide the most interesting projects. The disadvantage of this is that you can't always find new clients to work with when you are freelance. If you are working for an organisation, they find the clients for you.

Speaker 5: I'm a freelance accountant. I like my job, but it sometimes gets lonely working on your own. It is more sociable when you are working in an office. Also, freelance workers have to do their own accounts! For an accountant that's not a problem, but I know other freelance workers who find doing their job and doing their accounts is too difficult for them to do on their own.

Reading

"Finding a balance"

It is important for people to separate their work life from their home life. At the end of the work day, people should focus on the fact that this is also the end of that activity or task. Mothers and fathers both often need to work, but they have to balance their family and work. Parents who make should make sure that they spend enough quality time with their children.

Many people find it difficult to get the balance right between their work and their free time. Modern technology means that some people can be at work wherever they are. People can carry laptops and phones with them at all times which means that they can read their emails even in their free time. This allows many people to have more flexible working hours or to work from home. The problem is that some companies find it so easy to contact people that

they expect them to be available for work all the time. Even people who are relaxing at home may get an important call from work that they have to answer.

Although most workers enjoy what they do, people need rest as well. Some people work such long hours that they may suffer from stress. This can lead to a lack of sleep and feeling exhausted at work. People should remember that athletes who train for a competition always take breaks, so why should they not do the same from work? A break can also help to limit the number of days they need to take off because of illness.

Everyone has times when work can be difficult. If you have a problem at work, ask your manager for advice. He or she should be able to help you. This is often the best way out of stressful situations. It is part of a manager's job to help people with their problems.

VOCABULARY

accounts (n.)	حسابات	meetings (n.)	اجتماعات
accountant (n.)	محاسب	provide (v.)	يمد / يزود
accountancy (n.)	محاسبة	lonely (adv.)	وحيد
freelance (adj.\adv.)	حر / مستقل	lack (n.\v.)	نقص / ينقص
workers (n.)	عمال	task (n.)	مهمة
advantages (n.)	مميزات	quality (n.)	جودة
disadvantages (n.)	عيوب	available (adj.)	متوافر / متاح
regular (adj.)	منتظم	laptop (n.)	لاب توب
regularly (adv.)	بانتظام	flexible (adj.)	مرن
regularity (n.)	انتظام	contact (v.)	يتواصل
deadline (adj.)	موعد نهائى	stress (n.)	توتر / قلق
organisation (n.)	منظمة	stressful (adj.)	موتر
client (n.)	عميل	limit (adv.)	حد / يحد
society (n.)	مجتمع	limited (adv.)	محدود
social (adj.)	اجتماعى	competition (n.)	مناسبة / مسابقة
sociable (adj.)	شخص اجتماعى	illness (n.)	مرض
timetable (n.)	جدول مواعيد	break (n.\v.)	راحة / فسحة - يكسر
own (adj.\v.)	خاص - يملك	exhausted (adj.)	منهك / متعب
balance (n.\v.)	توازن / يوازن	activity (n.)	نشاط
balanced (adj.)	متوازن	parents (n.)	والدين
traditionally (adv.)	بطريقة تقليدية	technology (n.)	تقنية
choose (v.)	يختار	free time (n.)	وقت فراغ
choice (n.)	اختيار	purpose (n.)	غرض
increase (v.)	يزيد	allow (v.)	يسمح
amount (n.)	كمية	company (n.)	شركة
times (n.)	مرات	expect (v.)	يتوقع
manage (v.)	يدير	relax (v.)	يسترخى
manager (n.)	مدير	rest (n.\v.)	راحة / بقية
management (n.)	ادارة	suffer (v.)	يعانى
interview (v.)	يجرى حوار	athletes (n.)	رياضيين
decision (n.)	قرار	train (v.)	يدرب / يتدرب
book designer (n.)	مصمم كتب	advice (n.)	نصيحة
wherever (adv.)	اينما	particular (adj.)	خاص / معين
anywhere (adv.)	اى مكان	treat (n.\v.)	يعامل / يعالج

equal (adj.)	مساوى	positive (adj.)	ايجابى
equally (adv.)	بتساوى	pessimistic (adj.)	متشائم
equality (n.)	مساواة	thoughts (n.)	افكار
tips (n.)	ملاحظات / بقشيش	worries (n.)	قلق
laugh (v.)	يضحك	helpful (adj.)	خدوم
laughter (n.)	ضحك	calm (adj.)	هادى
medicine (n.)	دواء / طب	remember (v.)	يتذكر
improve (v.)	يحسن	remind (v.)	يذكر
gym (n.)	صالة العاب	argue (v.)	يجادل
questionnaire (n.)	استبيان	purpose (n.)	غرض
nationality (n.)	جنسية	services (n.)	خدمات
well-known (adj.)	معروف	independent (adj.)	مستقل
unknown (adj.)	غير معروف	independently (adv.)	باستقلالية
occupation (n.)	مهنة / احتلال	record (n.\v.)	سجل / يسجل
reasons (n.)	اسباب	revision (n.)	مراجعة
respect (n.\v.)	احترام / يحترم	graduates (n.)	خريجين
interrupt (v.)	يقاطع	spectators (n.)	مشجعين
mainly (adv.)	اساسا	recipe (n.)	وصفة اكل
admire (v.)	يعجب	stadium (n.)	استاد رياضى
ladder (n.)	سلم نقال	actor (n.)	ممثل
weight-lifting (n.)	رفع الاثقال	alarm clock (n.)	منبه
firefighter (n.)	رجل مطافى	together (prep.)	سويا

Prepositions حروف جر

look after	يعتنى بـ	on you own	بنفسك / بمفردك
look for	يبحث عن	difficult for	صعب لـ
work for	يعمل لـ	lack of	نقص فى
work with	يعمل مع	carry on	ينفذ
work on	يعمل على....	important for	مهم لـ
work in	يعمل فى	at the end of...	فى نهاية.....
take on	ينكب	available for	متوافر / متاح لـ
take off	تقلع / يخلع	focus on	يركز على
on time	فى الموعد المحدد	spend....with	يقضى.....مع
find.....for	يجد.....لـ	remind of	يذكر بـ
suffer from	يعانى من	ask for	يطلب
lead to	يؤدى الى	help....with	يساعد فى
train for	يتدرب لـ	separate....from	يفصل.....من
reason for	سبب لـ	the problem with	مشكلة.....
move away from	يبتعد عن	responsible for	مسئول عن
advantages of	مميزات.....	pay for	يدفع مقابل
disadvantages of	عيوب.....	stop.....from	يمنع.....من
a fear of	خوف من....	bad for	سىء لـ

Expressions تعبيرات

freelance writer	كاتب مستقل	make money	يكون مالا
freelance worker	عامل مستقل	make a timetable	يصمم جول مواعيد
freelance work	عمل مستقل	make a decision	يصنع قرار
working hours	ساعات عمل	make sure	يتأكد
regular work	عمل منتظم	make a cake	يصنع كحكة
get older	يكبر فى العمر	do accounts	يؤدى حسابات
fall asleep	ينام	do work \ a job	يؤدى عمل / وظيفة
manage your time	يدير وقته	balance his family and work	يوازن بين اسرته وعمله
time management	ادارة الوقت	a sports team	فريق رياضى
meet the deadlines	يلحق بالوعد النهائى	become successful	يصبح ناجح
work freelance	يعمل باستقلالية	sports career	عمل رياضى
take on projects	يلتزم بالشروع	live comfortably	يعيش بطريقة مريحة
work life	حياة العمل	get a call	يتلقى اتصال
home life	حياة المنزل	get the blance	يحصل على التوازن
quality time	وقت جيد	contact people	يتواصل مع الناس
feel exhausted	يشعر بالتعب	health problems	مشاكل صحية
take breaks	ياخذ راحة	a particular amount	كمية محددة / معينة
limit the number	يحدد العدد	stressful stiuations	مواقف مؤثرة
ask for advice	يطلب نصيحة		



👉 Asking for reasons:

- Can you tell my why.....?
- Is that the reason.....?
- What (did you choose her) for?
- What's the reason for.....?
- Why.....?

👉 Giving reasons:

- It's because.....
- For (two\three) reasons.
- To start with.....
- Firstly\ Secondaly, because.....
- That's one of the reasons.....
- Mainly because.....

Definitions تعريفات

- 1 - accounts** حسابات (accountant محاسب - accountancy محاسبة)
- a record of the money that a company or person has received and spent.
- 2 - freelance** حر / مستقل
- working independently for several different organizations.
- 3 - organization** منظمة (organize ينظم - organized منظم)
- a group of people with a particular purpose, such as a business.
- 4 - regular** منتظم (regularly بانتظام - regulation تنظيم)
- repeated, planned for the same time every day.
- 5 - deadline** موعد نهائى
- a date or time by which you must finish something.
- 6 - take on** ينكب على / يتولى مسؤولية
- start being responsible for.
- 7 - client** عميل
- someone who pays a person or organization for services or advice.
- 8 - sociable** اجتماعى "متعلق بالاجتمع" (society مجتمع - social اجتماعى)
- friendly and likes to be with other people.
- 9 - separate** يفصل (separated منفصل - separation عزل / فصل)
- to divide or split something into two or more parts.
- 10 - stress** توتر / ضغط (stressful موتر)
- continuous feelings of worry about your work or personal life that prevent you from relaxing.
- 11 - task** عمل / مهمة
- a piece of work that someone has to do, especially one that is difficult or unpleasant.
- 12 - balance** توازن
- when two equal things are treated as though they are equally important.
- 13 - suffer from stress** يعاني من التوتر
- to have an illness or health problem.
- 14 - lack** نقص / ينقص
- when you don't have enough of something.
- 15 - limit** يحدد
- to keep something less than a particular amount.
- 16 - take off** يأخذ اجازة / عطلة
- not go to work for a period of time.
- 17 - stressful** موتر
- making you worried and unable to relax.



- **social** اجتماعى (متعلق بالمجتمع)
 ► **sociable** شخص اجتماعى / عشرينى

Ex: People suffer a lot from social problems.

Ex: My brother is more sociable than me. He gets on with people quickly.

- **take off** يخلع ملابس / هزأ
 ► **take off** تقلع للطائرة
 ► **take off** يصبح ناجح (للاشياء)
 ► **take off** يأخذ اجازة من العمل
 ► **take+ persob + off** يفقد
 ► **take+ something + off** ينزع / يزيل

Ex: It was hot so I took off my jacket.

Ex: The plane took off at half past four.

Ex: Her sports career took off after she won the competition.

Ex: I can't take off any time this week.

Ex: He was able to take his father off perfectly.

Ex: I always take off my dolls' hair.

- **allow + obj. + to + Inf.** يسمح
 ► **let + obj. + Inf** يسمح

Ex: Sleeping for enough at night hours allows you to have a fresh day.

Ex: My fathers let me go with my friend on a picnic.

- **remember + to + Inf. \ V-ing** يتذكر.....ان.....
 ► **remind of\to + Obj. + from + V-ing** يذكر.....ب/ ان.....
Ex: Remember to do your homework regularly.
Ex: She always reminds me of her mother.

- **make - made- made** يصنع / ينتج
 (make timetable, make a plan, make a will, make a mistake, make a difference, make a mess, make a habit, make comments, make guess, make a fortune, make a noise, make a decision)
 ► **do – did- done** يفعل
 (do work, do a job, do accounts, do well, do badly, do research, do without, do the cooking, do the shopping, do without, do sports, to do with,)
 ► **get – got – got** يتلقى / يستلم
 (get money, get a prize, get a letter, get an email, get work)
Ex: He felt a sharp pain in his knee.
Ex: Her eyes ached from lack of sleep.
Ex: Don't play with that knife_ you could hurt yourself.

Grammar

- so \ such.....that..... enough \ too.....to

- نستخدم **so** ثم ظرف او صفة اما **such** فلا بد ان يتبعها اسم او اسم وصفة .

Ex: The film so boring.

Ex: It was such a boring film.

Ex: I like Omar and Salma. They are so nice.

Ex: I like Omar and Salma. They are such nice people.

- لاحظ الاتي:

so long = such a long time

so far = such a long way

so much, so many = such a lot of

Ex: Why did you buy so much food?

Ex: Why did you buy such a lot of food?

- ويمكن استخدام **that** مع **so** او **such** :

1-so + adj.\adv. + that..... جدا.....لدرجة ان

Ex: That cake was so nice that I'll have another one.

Ex: They walked so slowly that they missed the train.

2-such + a/an + Adj. + noun + that..... جدا.....لدرجة ان

Ex: It was such a useful book that I read it twice.

Ex: Tarek is such a friendly person that everyone likes him.

- نستخدم **enough** بعد الصفة او الظرف او قبل الاسماء اما **too** فانها تاتي قبل الصفة او الظرف .

Ex: He didn't get the job because he wasn't experienced enough.

Ex: I don't have enough money to lend you.

Ex: You never stop working. You work too hard.

- يمكن استخدام تلك القاعدة مع **too, enough** :

3-enough \ too.....for somebody\ something.

Ex: I don't have enough money for a holiday.

Ex: This shirt is too big for me. I need a smaller one.

- يمكن استخدام تلك القاعدة ايضا مع **too, enough** :

4- Adj.\adv. + enough + to + Inf..... جدا.....لدرجة ان

- وهذا التعبير يعطى معنى ايجابى.

Ex: Hamdi is tall and fast enough to be very good at basketball.

Ex: Hamdi is clever enough to answer the difficult questions.

5-too + Adj. \Adv. + to + inf..... جدا.....لدرجة ان

- وهذا التعبير يعطى معنى اكثر مما هو مطلوب او ضرورى.

Ex: The sea is too cold to swim in.

Ex: The coffee was too hot to drink.

Homework

1) Choose the correct answer

1. The company has an accountant to do the company.....
a. counts b. accounts c. coconuts d. countess
2. Tarek is not employed by the computer company. He is a.....worker.
a. freelance b. free range c. freely d. free-way
3. It is good to do.....exercice, so I go running every day.
a. burglar b. regular c. peculiar d. avatar
4. Manal has to finish the work tonight because there is an important.....tomorrow morning.
a. dead b. eyeline c. deadline d. online
5. Hamdi is very tired because he decided to.....two new projects at work.
a. take off b. take in c. take after d. take on
6. My father will be late home today because he has a meeting with an important.....
a. clinic b. client c. click d. alient
7. Your brother is very..... He likes talking to everyone he meets.
a. social b. sociable c. society d. socially
8. The United Nations is an important.....that works all over the world.
a. translation b. couple c. organisation d. team
9. Before the start of the new year, the teachers work together to..... a school timetable.
a. do b. make c. play d. build
10. Some graduates think that it is harder to.....work today than it used to be.
a. do b. make c. get d. build
11. My friend Mona.....really well in the test last week.
a. did b. made c. got d. built
12. Sami.....a lot of work last night, but he still didn't finish his homework.
a. did b. made c. built d. ate
13. How much money did Fareeda.....when she was working in the bank last year?
a. do b. make c. get d. build
14. Before I start revising, I always.....a revision plan.
a. do b. make c. get d. build
15. When I was young, my mother often.....me from my brother to stop us from arguing.
a. parade b. separate c. delibrate d. corborate
17. Adel's job is very.....He is a firefighter and his work is often very dangerous.
a. peaceful b. beautiful c. stressful d. merciful
18. The sports team has a good.....between people who are fast and people who are strong.
a. balance b. allowance c. dance d. alliance
19. Tamer never goes on a plane. He.....from a fear of flying.
a. buffers b. suffers c. differs d. buzzers
20. The teacher gave us all a..... Mine was to interview four students.
a. basket b. desk c. tusk d. task
21. In the north of Europe, some people become ill in winter because there is a of sunshine.
a. mount b. mint c. amount d. moat

22. After our walk in the mountains, Ireally tired.
a. got b. buffered c. suffered d. felt
23. Are you coming to football.....after school?
a. training b. exercise c. homework d. work
24. I can't phone my mother because she is.....
a. free b. homework c. available for d. at work
25. Please.....me to buy my cousin a present, or I will forget.
a. remember b. forget c. suffer d. remind
26. My grandmother isn't well. She often.....from headaches.
a. buffers b. differs c. suffers d. feels
27. People who work long hours often suffer.....stress.
a. of b. for c. from d. off
28. Your father reminds me.....a famous actor.
a. of b. for c. from d. off
29. The school library is available.....the English class today.
a. of b. for c. from d. off
30. When you make the cake, you need to separate the white of the egg.....the yellow.
a. of b. for c. from d. off
31. The plane is taking.....soon.
a. of b. for c. from d. off
32. I can't take.....any time this week.
a. of b. for c. from d. off
33. Her sports careeroff after she won the competition.
a. did b. made c. took d. got
34. It was hot so I took.....my jacket.
a. of b. for c. from d. off
35. The plane.....off at half past four.
a. did b. made c. took d. got
36. Can you tell me.....you were late for school?
a. where b. why c. what d. which
37. This book has some useful.....on how best to revise.
a. tops b. taps c. tapes d. tips
38. Dr Sakr would like to take.....more work at the hospital but she doesn't have time.
a. on b. up c. over d. in
39. They thought they were lost in the desert, but they became.....when they saw a road.
a. hopeful b. dreadful c. helpless d. hopeless
40. Mariam has always been good with money and does the.....for a large company in Cairo.
a. accounts b. accountants c. achievements d. activities
41. Yunis was ill last year and had to take a lot of time.....work.
a. from b. in c. on d. off
42. Fatma and Mona are very good friends and never like to be.....
a. helpful b. sparated c. obeyed d. together
43. Mustafa is always very.....and likes to talk to everyone.
a. social b. sociable c. socially d. sociably

44. I think that parents should.....the amount of time that children play computer games, because the games are bad for them.
a. increase b. recycle c. recover d. limit
45.is a record of the money that a company or person has received and spent
a. Counts b. Coconuts c. Accounts d. Cakes
46. A\An.....is a group of people with a particular purpose, such as a business.
a. organisation b. publication c. decoration d. operation
47. A\An.....is someone who pays a person or organization for services or advice.
a. applicant b. client c. publisher d. poet
48.is a date or time by which you must finish something.
a. Deadline b. Deadbody c. Snowline d. Line
49. To.....means to start being responsible for.
a. take off b. take in c. take for d. take after
50.means friendly and likes to be with other people.
a. Social b. Sociable c. Socially d. Society
51.means working independently for several different organizations.
a. Freelance b. Balance c. Tolerance d. Finance
52.means repeated, normal or usual.
a. Burglar b. Regular c. Ruler d. Pecular
53.means making you worried and unable to relax.
a. Stressful b. Helpful c. Careful d. Hopefull
54. To.....means not go to work for a period of time.
a. take on b. take in c. take off d. take over
55. To.....means to keep something less than a particular amount.
a. delete b. limit c. separate d. lack
56.means when you do not have enough of something.
a. Lake b. Luck c. Lack d. Lick
57. To.....means to have an illness or health problems.
a. take on b. take off c. suffer from d. lack of
58. When two equal things are treated as though they are equally important is called.....
a. dance b. balance c. lance d. bleach
59. To.....is to divide or split something into two or more parts.
a. spit b. collaborate c. press d. separate
60. A\An.....a piece of work that someone has to do, especially one that is difficult or unpleasant.
a. tusk b. mask c. task d. desk
61. Be.....pessimistic thoughts will increase your worries.
a. negative b. passive c. positive d. gloomy
62.me to buy a newspaper on the way home, or I will forget.
a. Repair b. Random c. Remember d. Remind
63. We should help our mothers as.....as we can.
a. many b. far c. much d. long
64. Although she does not have time for much....., she is very healthy.
a. training b. exercise c. homework d. task
65. He says his legs will.....after that long run.
a. feel b. suffer c. remind d. speak
66. The manager asked him if he was.....work next weekend.
a. available for b. at c. for d. over

67. Freelance workers have to.....their own accounts.
a. make b. do c. get d. separate
68. I'm only.....a few hours of work a day.
a. making b. doing c. getting d. eating
69. The problem with being a freelance worker is that you don't always.....regular work.
a. make b. do c. get d. eat
70. It can be hard to.....money and look after my family.
a. make b. do c. get d. eat
71. You can.....your own timetable.
a. make b. do c. get d. eat
72. It is important for people to.....their work life from their home life.
a. limit b. suffer c. separate d. moderate
73. Parents have to.....their family and work.
a. separate b. balance c. limit d. lack
74. Modern technology means that some people can be at work.....they are.
a. whatever b. whenever c. wherever d. whoever
75. Yesterday Ian important call from my uncle.
a. made b. did c. got d. limited
76. Stress can lead to a/an.....of sleep and feeling exhausted at work.
a. lack b. increase c. lock d. lick
77. Good students should always.....to do their homework well.
a. member b. remember c. remind d. recall
78. A break can help workers to limit the number of days they need to.....because of illness.
a. take on b. take off c. take in d. take away
79. I always try to be away from.....situations.
a. merciful b. stressful c. peaceful d. beautiful
80. Part of a manager's job is to help people.....their problems.
a. in b. of c. to d. with
81. My brother works in a big café and gets many.....every day.
a. tops b. taps c. tips d. tapes
82. I always ask my teachers.....advice.
a. about b. for c. of d. with
83. When I get tired of work, I always.....a break for ten minutes.
a. get b. make c. do d. take
84. Mothers should spend more.....time with their children than fathers.
a. quality b. equality c. quantity d. loyalty
85.thoughts always increase your worries.
a. Positive b. Optimistic c. Pessimistic d. Good
86. Employees should have breaks during their.....hours.
a. works b. working c. work d. work's
87. Smoking can.....to death.
a. allow b. lead c. limit d. separate
88. What is the advantages of working.....?
a. freelance b. glance c. freedance d. free
89. Don't be abstracted,.....on what you do.
a. fix b. fox c. focus d. fax

90. The clever goalkeeper took.....and caught the ball.
a. in b. on c. off d. of
91. That salad was.....nice that I'll ask the restaurant for the recipe.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
92. It wasa long film that some people fell asleep before the end.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
93. The stadium is big.....to hold 50,000 spectators.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
94. That ladder is.....long to be put on the back of your car.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
95. Today is much.....hot to play tennis outside.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
96. Elephants are.....powerful that they can push over trees.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
97. This is.....an old tree that it is amazing it is still alive.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
98. Nobody has been to the top of the mountain because it is.....dangerous to climb.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
99. This book is.....famous that nearly everyone has read it.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
100. I wanted to buy a new phone but it was expensive for me to buy.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
101. The hat wasn't big.....to wear.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
102. Ola isintelligent that she passed the exam easily.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
103. Hamdi is a strong man that he is very good at weight-lifting.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
104. Hana was ill.....to come to school.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
105. The book was.....interesting that I wanted to read it again.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
106. This story is.....difficult to believe.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
107. Is it ever cold.....to snow in Egypt?
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
108. The film was.....funny that I couldn't stop laughing.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
109. Is it ever.....hot to play games in the park?
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
110. Ahmed thinks that it is.....hot to tennis in the park today.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
111. The question was.....difficult that nobody could answer it.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
112. My sister is.....to go to school. She is only two.
a. so old b. too old c. not old enough d. such old

113. The phone is.....for her to buy. She doesn't have enough money.
a. expensive enough b. too expensive c. so expensive d. such an expensive
114. The light from the sun is.....strong that you cannot look at it.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
115. This bag is very heavy. I'm not strong.....to lift it.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
116. The bus went.....slowly that it was quicker to walk.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
117. This is.....an exciting book that I don't want to stop reading it.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
118. I'm.....busy to go to work every day.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
119. The exercise was.....easy that I finished it in two minutes.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
120. Rami is.....to make very few mistakes.
a. enough careful b. such a careful c. too careful d. so careful
121. The question is..... for the little boy to answer.
a. difficult enough b. such a difficult c. too difficult d. so difficult
122. It's.....an amazing play that you can't miss it.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
123. They are.....long questions that we don't have time to answer them all.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
124. The test was.....difficult to finish.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
125. It was not.....dark to see any stars in the sky.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
126. The food in that restaurant is.....good that we go there every week.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
127. It was.....a long game that we didn't finish it until ten o'clock.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
128. It was.....book that I read it twice.
a. enough useful b. such a useful c. too useful d. so useful
129. They walked.....slowly that they missed the train.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
130. Tarek was.....person that everyone likes him.
a. so friendly b. enough friendly c. such a friendly d. too friendly
131. Hamdi is tall and fast.....to be very good at basketball.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
132. The sea is.....cold to swim in it.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
133. The coffee was.....hot to drink.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
134. Hamdi is clever enough.....answer the difficult questions.
a. that b. for c. too d. to
135. That cake was.....nice that I'll have another one!
a. so b. such c. too d. enough

2) Read the following passage , then answer the questions:

There was once a man and his wife who loved each other very much. They were very poor. While her husband went out to find work as a farmhand, she would go from house to house to wash clothes. Their earnings were not much. The wife had lovely long hair which she was proud of. He had watch which was very precious to him. It used to be his father's. Once, the rain fell so hard for a few days that they had no work. Their money was running out. Both of them were worried that the other would go hungry. So, when the sun came out, they immediately left without saying a word to each other. When they came back a few hours later, they were each carrying bags full of food. The wife asked her husband where he got the money from. He had sold his precious watch to buy food for his wife. When her husband asked her the same question, she took off the shawl covering her head. The man gasped! Her hair was very short. She did it to get money for her husband's food. They hugged each other and laughed. They had both sacrificed something they loved for their beloved.

1. The watch used to be the.....

- a. wife b. father c. wife's father d. man's father

2. This story is a.....story.

- a. comic b. romantic c. tragic d. adventure

3. The writer wants us to be.....

- a. tolerant b. aggressive c. greedy d. critics

4. A shawl is a kind of.....

- a. veins b. veils c. vets d. vans

5. The man's wife was very.....

- a. miser b. bad c. beautiful d. ugly

6. The man's wife works as a.....

- a. teacher b. farmer c. maid d. nurse

7. How much did the man and his wife earn?

8. Find words in the passage which mean:

- a) expensive b) opened his mouth in surprise

9. How did the man and his wife sacrifice for the other?

10. Suggest a suitable title for the passage.

4) Finish the following dialogue:

It is Zaki's birthday, Nader wants to give him a present but he does not have enough money. He wants to borrow some from his elder brother, Mohsen.

Nader : Hello, Mohsen. Would you mind doing me a favour ?

Mohsen : What is it Nader ?

Nader : I wonder I).....?

Mohsen : A hundred pounds! That seems a lot What for ?

Nader : 2).....

Mohsen : but father gave you a hundred pounds last week, didn't he ?

Nader : Yes, but I spent them all.

Mohsen : 3).....?

Nader : I asked her but she told me that she didn't have enough to lend me.

Mohsen : 4).....?

Nader : As soon as I can. Next month, perhaps.

Mohsen : Next year is more likely, well, 5).....

Nader : Oh! Thank you very much. That's very kind of you.

Mohsen : 6).....

5) Write a paragraph of 120 words about ONE (1) only of the following:

- advantages and disadvantages of being a freelancer.
- Working hard leads to success.

Translation

6) a) Translate into Arabic :

1- All work with no play makes you a dull boy.

2- Many people find it difficult to get the balance right between their work and their free time..

b) Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English :

١- يحاول المرء دائما ان يوازن بين اسرته وعمله .

٢- هل تفضل العمل الحرام العمل الحكومى؟



REVISION B

LISTENING

Interviewer : As you know, we are looking for a *freelance* journalist. So, you're interested in applying, are you?

Candidate : Yes, that's right.

Interviewer : I would like to ask you a few questions. Could you tell me more about your *qualifications*?

Candidate : Of course. I *have* both a *degree in law* and some experience as a journalist, too.

Interviewer : Can you tell me about your *experience*?

Candidate : Certainly. Firstly, I started writing for a local newspaper. I wanted to write news, but there weren't enough *staff* there to only write news, so soon I was in charge of writing each part of the newspaper: you know, the weather, sports and travel. They liked my work so much that I became manager in just two years.

Interviewer : It's good that you were the manager of the local newspaper. However, we don't have enough work to have a new member of staff here. We only need a freelance journalist. Why do you want the job?

Candidate : Mainly because I know your newspaper has a very good *reputation*. I would like to get some experience working for a large national newspaper like yours, which millions of people read every day.

Interviewer : Your experience is certainly *impressive*. Do you have any questions for me?

Candidate : Yes. Firstly, I have a degree in law. This could help me in my work, couldn't it?

Interviewer : Certainly. Our journalists write about all kinds of subjects.

Candidate : Secondly, I also have two children at school. Are the hours *flexible* or do I need to be at my desk at certain times?

Interviewer : We already have a few mothers working for us, so yes, we can be flexible. I think you'll find working here very interesting.

Candidate : Thank you. Well, I'm *available* to start *whenever* you like.

Interviewer : Good. I'll call you next week.

READING

Karimat El-Sayed



You may not know **either** the name Dr Karimat El-Sayed or her work, but in 2003 she won an award as one of the best women scientists in the world. Dr Karimat El-sayed, who was a science professor at Ain Shams University in Cairo , won the award for her work on the structure of metal. Dr El-Sayed is **special in** the world of science because she was the first Egyptian woman to receive one of these awards. As an **enthusiastic** scientist, she has **spent much** of her life **encouraging** other women to become scientists. " When you educate a woman, you educate a family, a nation," she says.

When she was at secondary school, Dr Krimat El-Sayed heard about the discoveries of the woman scientist, Marie Curie, and decided that she wanted to be a scientist herself. El-Sayed ,who worked very hard at school , was good at Science and Maths. However, it was not common for women to go to university at this time, so it **took** her a long time **to get** her family **to agree** to the idea.

After she had graduated, El-Sayed travelled to Britain to continue her studies. There, one of her women teachers, who was also a scientist, really inspired her. The teacher showed her that it was possible to **balance** having an important job **with** having a family, explaining that after work, she really **appreciated** the time with her children. Later, El-Sayed married a man who was also a research scientist, and they had three children.

Dr El-Sayed has **spent** a lot of her time **travelling** around Egypt **encouraging** girls **to think** seriously about science as an **occupation**. She thinks that there are not **enough** women scientists **to do** important **work**, although they are often good at research. "Women like details. The pioneers (in science today) are women."

EXTRA READING

Values and Morals

At school, you have probably had the **support** of your teachers, your family and your friends. When you leave secondary school, you will start to have responsibilities for your own life. This means being in control of your time and also your choice of career. However, it is important never to forget the **values** and **morals** that your family and your school have taught you.

Show respect to older people, but also to your work colleagues, both male and female. Remember to be tolerant of people who are different to you. Be loyal to all your friends.

When you are at work, make sure that you help and support your work **colleagues**. It is good to be ambitious, but do not **envy** people who are promoted before you. Be patient and always work hard, and you will be **rewarded** one day.

When you are not at work, spend some time helping your local community. This is an excellent way to meet new people, and to help improve the lives of others. Try to help the poor **whenever** you can. Most people find that **voluntary** and charitable work is so rewarding that they are happy to do it.

Your school has taught you how to pass your exams, but it has also taught you important values and morals that will help **whatever** you choose.

Definition of Morals

Morals:

- Morals are principles and values based on what a person or society believes are the right, proper or acceptable ways of behaving.
- When an individual is dealing with, or capable of distinguishing between, right and wrong.

Most people's morals and values adapt to their circumstances. I'm no longer surprised.

SONYA TECLAI - THEGOODVIBE.CO

My moral in life is simple, you treat me good & i'll definitely treat you better :)

inspired on DesComments

VOCABULARY

freelance (adj.\adv.)	حر / مستقل - بحرية	charity (n.)	جمعية خيرية
reward (n.\v.)	مكافأة / يكافىء	charitable (adj.)	خيري
rewarding (adj.)	مكافىء / مجزى	colleague (n.)	زميل عمل
qualifications (n.)	مؤهلات	envy (v.\n.)	يحسد / حسد
experience (n.)	خبرة	envious (adj.)	حاسد / حاقد
degree (n.)	درجة علمية	enviable (adj.)	يحسد عليه
staff (n.)	هيئة موظفين	male (n.)	ذكر
manager (n.)	مدير	female (n.)	انثى
reputation (n.)	سمعة	loyal (adj.)	وفى / مخلص
impressive (adj.)	مبهر	loyalty (n.)	وفاء / اخلاص
law (n.)	قانون	positive (adj.)	ايجابي
subjects (n.)	مواد	suitable (adj.)	مناسب
flexible (adj.)	مرن	voluntary (adj.)	تطوعي
available (adj.)	متاح / متوافر	volunteer (n.\v)	متطوع / يتطوع
whenever (adv.)	حينما	behave (v.)	يتصرف
wherever (adv.)	اينما	behaviour (n.)	سلوك
whatever (adv.)	مهما	support (n.\v.)	دعم / يدعم
structure (n.)	تركيب / هيكل	responsibility (n.)	مسئولية
metal (n.)	معدن	responsible (adj.)	مسئول
special (adj.)	مميز	choice (n.)	اختيار
specialist (n.)	متخصص	choose (v.)	يختار
enthusiastic (adj.)	متحمس	values (n.)	قيم
encourage (v.)	يشجع	morals (n.)	اخلاق
educate (v.)	يعلم	respect (n.\v.)	يحترم / احترام
discoveries (n.)	اكتشافات	tolerance (n.)	تسامح
science (n.)	علم	tolerant (adj.)	متسامح
scientist (n.)	عالم	ambition (n.)	طموح
maths (n.)	رياضيات	ambitious (adj.)	طموح
common (adj.)	معروف / شائع	promotion (n.)	ترقية / نقل
inspire (v.)	يلهم	promote (v.)	يرقى
balance (n.\v.)	توازن / يوازن	patience (n.)	صبر
appreciate (v.)	يقدر	patient (adj.\n.)	صبور / مريض
research (n.\v.)	بحث / يبحث	community (n.)	مجتمع
occupation (n.)	وظيفة / انشغال / احتلال	local (adj.)	محلى
details (n.)	تفاصيل	national (adj.)	قومي
pioneer (n.)	رائد	international (adj.)	دولي
summarise (v.)	يلخص	excellent (adj.)	ممتاز
brilliant (adj.)	رائع / لامع	improve (v.)	يحسن
reason (n.)	سبب	improvement (n.)	تحسين
alive (adj.)	على قيد الحياة	rewarding (adj.)	مجزى / مكافىء
successful (adj.)	ناجح	activities (n.)	انشطة
words (n.)	كلمات	poster (n.)	ملصق
respond (v.)	يستجيب	career (n.)	حياة مهنية

Prepositions حروف جر

apply for	يتقدم لوظيفة	good at	جيد فى
enthusiastic about	متحمس بخصوص	get....to....	يجعل.....يوافق على
in charge of	مسئول عن	balance....with	يوازن.....مع
in control of	مسئول عن	pioneer in	رائد فى
responsible for	مسئول عن	vote on	يصوت على
argue for	يطالب/ يؤيد	reason for	سبب لـ
available to	متوافر/ متاح لـ	at certain times	فى اوقات معينة
suitable for	مناسب لـ	work for	يعمل لـ
special in	متميز فى	tolerant of	متسامح مع
specialize in	يتخصص فى	different to	مختلف لـ
travel around	يجول	different from	مختلف عن
encourage....to	يشجع.....لكى	suggest....for	يقترح.....لـ

Expressions تعبيرات

a freelance journalist	صحفى حر / مستقل	a research scientist	عالم بحث
have a degree in law	لديه شهادة فى القانون	be over the moon	سعيد جدا
a Local newspaper	جريدة محلية	values and morals	قيم واخلاق
get some experience	يحصل على بعض الخبرة	show respect	يظهر الاحترام
flexible hours	ساعات مرنة	local community	مجتمع محلى
a member of staff	عضو من هيئة العاملين	improve the lives	يحسن الحيات
positive role	دور ايجابى	make a poster	يصمم ملصق اعلانى
a suitable job	وظيفة مناسبة	voluntary and charitable work	العمل الخيرى التطوعى
women scientists	نساء عالمات	your own life	حياتك الخاصة
win an award for	يفوز بجائزة فى	a newspaper report	تقرير صحفى
receive an award	يتلقى/ يستلم جائزة	business studies	دراسات اعمال
enthusiastic scientist	عالم متحمس		

Definitions تعريفات

1 - charitable

خيرى

- charitable organizations give money or help to people who need it.

2 - colleague

زميل عمل

- someone you work with.

3 - envy

يحسد / حسد

(envious حاسد – enviable محسود – enviably محسود)

- to wish you had or could do something that someone else has, or can do.

4 - female

انثى

- a girl or woman, not a boy or man.

5 - male

ذكر

- a boy or a man, not a girl or woman.

6 - loyal وفى / مخلص (ولاء / loyalty)

- always faithful to a person, country, etc.

7 - value قيمة (valuables - لا قيمة له valueless - قيم valuable)

- your moral belief in what is right and wrong.

8 - voluntary تطوعى (volunteer - بتطوع voluntarily)

- working without being paid.

Homework

1) Choose the correct answer

1. This work is You will not be paid for it.
a. compulsory b. voluntary c. vulnerably d. obligation
2. To apply for this job, you should have some work.....
a. experience b. expert c. experiment d. expertise
3. My brother have a.....in law.
a. licence b. degree c. agree d. degrade
4. It was not.....for women to go to university in the past.
a. comma b. coma c. famous d. common
5. Dr Karimat El-Sayed is.....in the world of science.
a. specialist b. special c. specially d. especially
6. It took Hazem three hours.....all his homework.
a. finish b. finishing c. to finish d. to finishing
7. Rana used to spend most of her time.....in the garden.
a. play b. playing c. to play d. to playing
8. It is possible to balance having an important job.....having a family.
a. for b. to c. in d. with
9. It took Yara a long time to get her family.....to the idea.
a. agreeing b. to agree c. agree d. to agreeing
10. The.....in science today are women.
a. pianoes b. pioneers c. fathers d. pilots
11. When she heard the good news, she was over the.....
a. sun b. earth c. moon d. sea
12. Emily Dickinson did not like to leave her home.....she wrote most of her poems.
a. who b. which c. where d. when
13. My cousins are people.....likes and dislikes are the same.
a. who b. whom c. whose d. that
14. The toy is.....big to go in that box.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
15. My parents.....have mobiles phones.
a. all b. either c. neither d. both
16. All my.....at work are very friendly and helpful.
a. colleges b. classmates c. collages d. colleagues
17. Voluntary and charitable work is so.....that you are happy to do it.
a. awarding b. rewarding c. boarding d. boring

18. Try to help the poor.....you can.
a. whatever b. wherever c. whenever d. whoever
19. Essmat can be a name for a..... or a female.
a. male b. mile c. lime d. lamb
20. Don't.....people who are better than you.
a. invent b. invite c. convey d. envy
21. The police caught the woman.....bag they found the stolen jewellery.
a. in which b. in whose c. at which d. at whose
22. I love.....you honesty and politeness.
a. all b. either c. neither d. both
23. We play football.....Sunday evening.
a. each b. either c. neither d. every
24. She shouldn't get married yet. She's not old.....
a. such b. so c. too d. enough
25. The bed..... I slept in yesterday wasn't very comfortable.
a. where b. in which c. which d. when
26. The weather was very good,.....we hadn't expected.
a. where b. what c. which d. that
27. They've got three cars, two of.....they never use.
a. where b. what c. which d. that
28. Fortunately we had a map,.....we would have got lost.
a. in which b. without which c. for which d. at which
29. The woman wants to work.....hours because she has a baby.
a. flexible b. fragile c. tough d. hard
30. Dr Aisha argued for a more.....role for women in society.
a. passive b. positive c. negative d. trivial

Translation

6) a) Translate into Arabic :

1- It is good to be ambitious, but do not envy people who are promoted before you.

.....

.....

2- Most people find that voluntary and charitable work is rewarding that they are happy to do it.

.....

.....

b) Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English :

١- من المهم ألا تنسى القيم والاخلاق التي علمتك إياها أسرتك ومدرستك.

.....

.....

٢- عندما تعلم امرأة فإنك تعلم أسرة وأمة.

.....

.....

Practice Test 2a

A. Vocabulary and structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Tanta is the city..... my grandparents were born.

- a. which b. where c. who d. when

2- My mother really..... it when my sisters and I cooked dinner for her.

- a. apologised b. appreciated c. appealed d. thanked

3- This is the book my favourite character goes to the Arctic.

- a. which b. that c. in which d. to which

4- Mr Shabana has an important in the government.

- a. role b. roil c. rule d. root

5- Omar, mother is a scientist, always does well in the science tests.

- a. whose b. who c. who's d. for whom

6- The army captain is in of fifty soldiers today.

- a. charge b. change c. core d. care

7- Lina has two brothers, but they are not good at basketball because tall.

- a. either is b. each are c. neither is d. neither are

8- I don't think that tree is any more. All its leaves are brown.

- a. live b. life c. alive d. alone

9- There was a fire in the toyshop and toy was damaged.

- a. both b. all c. every d. half

10- Ali said that he would be here at midday and here he is. He never..... a promise.

- a. takes b. breaks c. makes d. keeps

11- It is big car that all the family can travel in it.

- a. so b. such c. enough d. such a

12- We walked a really long way to get to the shop, but it was in.....It had already closed.

- a. veil b. vein c. vain d. view

13- Ahmed thinks that it is hot to play tennis in the park today.

- a. so b. such c. enough d. too

14- The publisher told the writer that the..... for his new book was next April.

- a. deadline b. debt c. line d. end

15- The phone is for her to buy. She doesn't have enough money.

- a. expensive enough b. too expensive
c. so expensive d. such an expensive

16- It is usual for people to suffer from..... when they have an important job.

- a. stressful b. distressed c. stress d. stressed

17- The question was difficult that nobody could answer it.

- a. so b. such c. enough d. too

18- Using the computer for a long time Hana headaches

- a. takes b. gives c. does d. makes

19- My sister is to go to school. She is only two.

- a. so old b. too old c. not old enough d. such old

20- This book has some useful on how best to revise.

- a. tops b. taps c. tapes d. tips

21- Hamdi wants to study English or history at university. He's not sure.

- a. either b. both c. neither d. half

22- We usually take a 30-..... break at a school.

- a. minutes b. minute c. minutes' d. minute's

23- My mother gave child at the party a small present.

- a. all b. each c. either d. both

24- Don't drink too much coffee or it will keep you..... at night.

- a. wake b. woken c. asleep d. awake

25- Our school is kilometre from my house.

- a. half of b. half a c. half of a d. half

26- Khaled wants to be a..... so he can work for the government.

- a. political b. politics c. politician d. population

27- The shop, I visited last week, has some great souvenirs.

- a. when b. where c. who d. which

28- The palace is very..... . It has more than 30 rooms!

- a. impressed b. impressive c. improved d. industrial

29- I could not decide..... to wear to the wedding party.

- a. which b. what c. that d. who

30- Dr Sakr would like to take.....more work at the hospital but she doesn't have time.

- a. on b. up c. over d. in

B. Reading Comprehension

2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Heba had worked in nursing for many years. She was in charge of four other nurses and she was respected by each member of staff at the hospital. It was difficult and sometimes very stressful work. She was responsible for the health of a lot of people. However, she always felt happy when people recovered and finally went home again. She always found this very rewarding.

She worked such long hours that it was sometimes difficult to be sociable after work. She usually went home and watched a film on television with her family. She found this a good way to **unwind**.

It was a Tuesday morning. Heba had started work very early that day and she was doing her regular check of the patients. She gave them their medicine and made sure that they were comfortable. Then she went to check a new patient. He was in a private room, separate from the other patients. He was a man who had been sent to the hospital the night before after a bad traffic accident.

Heba looked at the man, who was unconscious when he first arrived. Heba had seen him before. He was a famous actor who everybody in her family knew and liked. The doctor said that he had suffered a bad head injury from the crash. He was so ill that he would have to stay in hospital for many weeks. But something was very strange. Heba had seen him in a film the week before. In the film, he had to go to hospital after an accident, and he had later died. Heba didn't want that to happen in her hospital!

1- Why was the man who came to hospital unconscious?

- a. He had fallen asleep. b. He was not alive.
c. He had had a bad accident. d. The nurse did not know.

2- Why do you think that he was in a private room?

- a. He was very poor. b. He had a dangerous disease.
c. He didn't like other people. d. He was famous.

3- What was unusual about the actor coming to hospital?

- a. The same thing had happened to him in a film b. He had never been there before.
c. He was never usually ill. d. He usually had private doctors.

4- Where does this text come from?

- a. a science magazine b. a newspaper article c. a poem d. a story

5- What does the underlined word that refer to?

- a. the actor dying c. what the doctor told her
b. Heba's job as a nurse d. other strange things

6- What do you think the word **unwind** means.....

- a. go to sleep b. sit down c. relax d. make money

7- What did Heba always find rewarding?

8- Why was it sometimes very stressful at Heba's work?

9- What do you think will happen to the actor? Why?

10- Do you think that Heba was a good nurse? Why / Why not?

The Novel

3. a Choose the correct answer:

1- Why did Colonel Sapt and Fritz von Tarlenheim not eat much that evening?

- a. They knew the food was poisoned .
- b. They were not hungry.
- c. They were very ill.
- d. They did not want to eat much before the important coronation .

2- Why did the poor people in the capital want Duke Michael to become King?

- a. They wanted things to change.
- b. They wanted things to stay the same.
- c. They thought he was a lazy man.
- d. They wanted a war with the King.

3- The King has to return to the palace in the dark because

- a. they don't want people to know that he was ill
- b. he is not wearing the King's clothes
- c. the poor people would attack him if they saw him
- d. he is frightened of the Duke

4- Rudolf has to leave the country before it's light so that

- a. the Duke can become King
- b. nobody knows that he pretended to be the King
- c. he can write a story about what happened
- d. people don't think that he poisoned the King

b. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions:

1. Why do you think Duke Michael tried to get rid of his brother by poisoning him instead of any other way?

2. If you were Rassendyll, would you agree to risk your life and replace the King? Why?

3. Why do you think that Rudolf really believed that he was the King in the capital city?

C. Writing

4. Finish the following dialogue:

Warda is telling Samia about some work.

Warda :I've been asked to write an article for a website.

Samia :1).....? What's it about?

Warda :It's about recycling.

Samia :2).....?

Warda :I chose recycling because I think it's an important subject.

Samia :What is going to be in the article?

Warda :Well, it's a bit difficult to explain .

Samia :3).....?

Warda :Yes, to summarise, the article is going to be about how people can recycle more.

Samia :4).....?

Warda :For two reasons. Firstly, I sent them the idea for the article last week and they liked it. 5.).....

Samia :When did you write for them before?

Warda :I wrote an article last year. 6).....

Samia :Well, I'm looking forward to reading it!

5- Write a paragraph of about ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following:

- a job that you would like to do, and why
- a famous woman that you respect

[illegible]

6- A. Translate into Arabic:

- 1. Egyptian women have always played a vital role in development projects.**

2. It is important for people to separate their work from their home life.

B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English:

- ١- لحسن الحظ ، كانت المشكلة سهلة جدا على أخي ليحلها.

- ٢- سوف تتمتع المدارس بكافة الوسائل التعليمية و التكنولوجيا الحديثة.

Practice Test 2b

A. Vocabulary and structure

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- The explorer did not go with anyone else to Antarctica . He went
a. slightly b. solo c. special d. lonely
- 2- the rice that you need is in the cupboard.
a. All b. Both c. Either d. Each
- 3- In most countries, you need a/an to drive a car.
a. letter b. degree c. licence d. qualification
- 4- Nagwa is enjoying her new job because day of the week is different.
a. both b. all c. every d. either
- 5- I told my little brother to read this book because it is..... for young children.
a. suitable b. employable c. reliable d. impossible
- 6- Grandmother says that my brothers and I can..... take a cake from the kitchen.
a. each b. every c. both d. either
- 7- My cousin wants to have a..... in law.
a. mark b. work c. degree d. licence
- 8- There are two restaurants by the park and they are..... very good.
a. all b. either c. each d. both
- 9- To find the bank, walk this road and it is on the right.
a. alive b. ashore c. along d. around
- 10- By this time tomorrow, my father..... to England.
a. will fly b. would fly c. will have flown d. flies
- 11- Ashraf is a good student. He never..... the rules .
a. becomes b. blocks c. follows d. breaks
- 12- The light from the sun is so strong that you cannot look at it.
a. such b. enough c. so d. too
- 13- The maths test was very..... so nobody did very well at it.
a. challenging b. easy c. uncertain d. promising
- 14- You can see Ali now because he..... home.
a. just arrived b. has yet arrived c. has just arrived d. already arrived
- 15- We were very tired after the sports competition and we were all by nine o'clock!
a. along b. ahead c. awake d. asleep
- 16- This bag is very heavy. I'm not strong to lift it!
a. such b. enough c. so d. too
- 17- They thought they were lost in the desert, but they became.....when they saw a road.
a. hopeful b. dreadful c. helpless d. hopeless
- 18- The bus went slowly that it was quicker to walk!
a. such b. enough c. so d. too
- 19- Imad hit his head and became..... , but he is feeling much better now.
a. uncommon b. uncertain c. unconscious d. unhealthy
- 20- This is..... an exciting book that I don't want to stop reading it!
a. such b. enough c. so d. too
- 21- Mariam has always been good with money and does the.....for a large company in Cairo.
a. accounts b. accountants c. achievements d. activities
- 22- Jomana, is good friends with my sister, is really good at tennis.
a. who b. whose c. what d. which
- 23- Yunis was ill last year and had to take a lot of time work.
a. from b. in c. on d. off

24- This is the hotel I stayed when I was young.

- a. which b. what c. where d. when

25- Fatma and Mona are very good friends and never like to be

- a. helpful b. separated c. obeyed d. together

26- This is a book..... the hero travels to space.

- a. which b. where c. in which d. at which

27- Mustafa is always very..... and likes to talk to everyone!

- a. social b. sociable c. socially d. sociably

28- Saturday,..... we always play football, is always a busy day for me.

- a. that b. on which c. where d. what

29- I think that parents should.....the amount of time that children play computer games, because the games are bad for them.

- a. increase b. recycle c. recover d. limit

30- Mayathe fruit carefully before she bought it.

- a. had checked b. checks c. has checked d. checking

B. Reading Comprehension

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In my project, I have to write about three powerful women in history. It is not easy to decide who to write about because there have been many important women! However, I'm going to start with Hatshepsut, who was ruler of ancient Egypt for longer than any other woman. She was the daughter of Thutmose I. During her time as Pharaoh, she helped to build many important buildings, started trade with new countries and won some important wars. She died in around 1458 BCE. Archaeologists did not know very much about Hatshepsut until the nineteenth century. This might be because pictures and sculptures of the Pharaoh show her as a man.

Next, I want to write about *Emperor Wu Zetian*. Wu Zetian had a good education . She was ruler of China in the first century CE and helped to improve Chinese people's education. Wu Zetian, who died at the age of 80, also helped to improve China's agriculture. In that way, there was enough food for everyone to eat. She is impressive because she is the only woman in China to have ruled as an Emperor.

Finally, I will include Britain's Queen Victoria who ruled from 1837 to 1901. She was a respected Queen for 63 years at a time when Britain was the most powerful country in the world. She was also a wife and the mother of nine children. The Queen insisted on a law to stop people using slaves in 1838. She was also responsible for reducing the number of hours that people had to work in factories.

1- Which of the following did Hatshepsut not do to help ancient Egypt?

- a. sell goods to other countries b. win battles with other countries
c. help to build d. open new schools

2- How do you think that Wu Zetian's education helped her to be a good ruler?

- a. She learned how to help other people. b. She could trade with other countries.
c. She knew about art. d. She could win wars.

3- How did Wu Zetian make sure that people had enough to eat?

- a. She helped people's education . b. She improved farms.
c. She opened shops. d. She opened factories.

4- What is the main idea of the text?

- a. Women should be rulers. b. Women can do great things.
c. Women were usually successful in the past. d. You can trust women.

5- What does the underlined word this refer to?

- a. Why archaeologists did not know very much about Hatshepsut.
b. Why Hatshepsut died.
c. Why people thought Hatshepsut was a man.
d. Why people painted pictures of Hatshepsut.

6- What do you think the word *Emperor* refers to?

- a. someone's name
b. a part of China
c. the name of a book
d. the title of a ruler

7- Do you agree with the choice of these three women? Why / Why not?

8- Which three women does the writer choose to write about?

9- What were 3 of Hatshepsut's accomplishments?

10- Give a suitable title for this passage.

The Novel

3 a Choose the correct answer:

1- Why wasn't Rassendyll as sick as the King was?

- a. He was stronger than the King.
b. He did not eat the same food as the King.
c. He did not eat as many cakes as the King.
d. He knew what was planned for the King.

2- How does Rassendyll feel about pretending to be the King?

- a. He is looking forward to it. b. He feels nervous.
c. He feels confident. d. He loves it.

3- What was the city of Strelsau like?

- a. It was modern.
- b. It was very old.
- c. It was a mixture of old and new buildings.
- d. It was very poor.

4- Why do you think that Rassendyll was afraid when he saw Antoinette de Mauban on the balcony?

- Because he thought that she might recognise him.
- Because she recognised him.
- Because she wanted to marry the King.
- Because she knew that he was not the King.

b. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions:

1. Why do you think that Fritz and Sapt locked up Johann's mother with the King?

2. Why do you think that Sapt told Rassendyll the history of the King's life?

3. Was Rassendyll right not to bear responsibilities in England? Why?

C. Writing

4- Finish the following dialogue:

Ramy and Shady are talking about a friend who has a new job.

Ramy : Ahmed has got a new job at the bank in Damietta.

Shady : 1)..... . When does he start?

Ramy : Next week. 2).....

Shady : Yes, I'm sure he can't wait to start. 3).....?

Ramy : For two reasons. Firstly, because they pay him well. 4).....

Shady : Yes, you must be good with numbers to work in a bank!

Ramy : He has friends in Damietta, too.

Shady : 5).....?

Ramy : Yes. He knows Damietta very well, too. Look. This is the title of his new job. It's very long .

Shady : 6).....?

Ramy : Yes . To paraphrase, it means that he is in charge of business accounts.

5- Write an email to your friend of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following:

Your name is Gehad. Your friend's name is Shams. His/Her address is Shams@newmail.com.

- a. the important role of women in society
b. a job you would like to do and why you would like to do it

[illegible]

6- A. Translate into Arabic:

1. In 2003, Dr Karimat El-Sayed won an award as one of the world's best scientists.
2. The problem with freelance work is that you don't always get regular work.

B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English:

- ١- هل تعلم أن أول أطباء أسنان في العالم كانوا مصريين؟
- ٢- احترس! هذا المكان أعمق من أن يسبح فيه الأطفال.

Unit 7

Reach for the stars

LISTENING



- Interviewer** : Thank you for coming into the studio this morning. Could you start by telling the listeners what you're doing this week?
- Astronaut** : Well, this is a very special week for me. Tomorrow afternoon, I'm being taken with two other astronauts to a secret location. The spaceship launches at 7.50 the next evening.
- Interviewer** : How exciting! How long does it take to reach the Space Station?
- Astronaut** : It takes about six hours. I'm really looking forward to it.
- Interviewer** : What is your mission, exactly?
- Astronaut** : There are two or three little things that need to be looked at on the International Space Station, but the main problem is the temperature control system. We think there may be a leak of some kind.
- Interviewer** : Is that a problem?
- Astronaut** : We don't think so. We think it will be repaired quite quickly.
- Interviewer** : Is it a difficult job?
- Astronaut** : No, not particularly, but we'll almost certainly need to spend some time working outside.
- Interviewer** : Do you mean a spacewalk?
- Astronaut** : Yes, maybe, but we won't know until we're there. Then all the equipment will be examined.
- Interviewer** : Isn't that really dangerous?
- Astronaut** : Not really. We're given a lot of training. We're told exactly what to do in these situations when we will be weightless in space.
- Interviewer** : How long will you be in space for?
- Astronaut** : We'll probably be there for about five or six days. It depends on how serious the problems are.
- Interviewer** : I'm sure you'll be interviewed by a lot of journalists after your mission, but we'd love to talk to you again when you get back!
- Astronaut** : I'd be happy to.
- Interviewer** : Thank you.

Reading

"Space holidays"

★ July 2009 was the 40th **anniversary** of man first **walking** on the Moon.. Now a representative for the World Tourism Organisation predicts that, in the next ten years, people will be taken into space for their holidays. They will be flown in a spaceship to a space station which will orbit the earth at a height of 320 kilometres – that is about the same as the **distance** from Cairo to El-Minya. The space station itself will be like a giant **spinning wheel** that looks like a bike wheel. There will be two special areas: one with **gravity** like earth and one with **zero gravity** for **weightless sports**.

★ Some people who are interested in space holidays are worried that, as space tourists, they will suffer from the same horrible **side effects** as astronauts have suffered from, but experts say that there are now **treatments** for most side effects.

★ Just think about such a holiday in space. Everyone who has travelled in space has described the **amazing feeling of looking down on** the Earth as it spins below you. It will be impossible to go shopping or go for a walk, but think of the fun you can have with weightless football or weightless gymnastics.

★ For most people, the main disadvantage at the moment is the **cost** of space holidays. **Currently**, the cost of a holiday is very high. But like everything else, **the more** people want to do something, **the cheaper** it will become. So, if you are interested, start saving now!

VOCABULARY

launch (v.\n.)	يطلق / يدشن - اطلاق	organisation (n.)	منظمة
leak (n.)	تسريب	predict (v.)	يتنبأ
mission (n.)	مهمة / مامورية	prediction (n.)	تنبؤ
weightless (adj.)	بلا وزن	orbit (n.\v.)	يدور / مدار
weightlessness (n.)	انعدام الوزن	height (n.)	ارتفاع
reach (v.)	يصل	wheel (n.)	عجلة
astronaut (n.)	رائد فضاء	experts (n.)	خبراء
spaceship (n.)	سفينة فضاء	treatments (n.)	علاجات
exciting (adj.)	مثير	treat (v.)	يعالج
special (adj.)	مميز / خاص	amazing (adj.)	مذهل
space station (n.)	محطة فضاء	amazed (n.)	منذهل
temperature (n.)	درجة حرارة	fun (n.)	متعة / لهو
control (n.\v.)	تحكم / يتحكم	funny (adj.)	مضحك
system (n.)	نظام	main (adj.)	اساسى / رئيسى
repair (v.)	يصلح	cost (n.\v.)	تكلفة / يكلف
particularly (adv.)	خصيصا	save (v.)	يوفر / يحفظ
spacewalk (n.)	سير الفضاء	transport (n.\v.)	نقل
equipment (n.)	معدات (لا تعد)	communication (n.)	اتصال / تواصل
equip (v.)	يجهز / يعد	technology (n.)	تكنولوجيا
examine (v.)	يفحص	expect (v.)	يتوقع
examination (n.)	فحص / اختبار	expectation (n.)	توقع
train (n.\v.)	تدريب / يتدرب	powerful (adj.)	قوى
serious (adj.)	خطير / جاد	fearless (adj.)	بلا خوف
interview (v.)	يدير حوار	painful (adj.)	مؤلم
journalist (n.)	صحفى	tasteful (adj.)	ذو طعم
ladder (n.)	سلم نقال	useless (adj.)	بلا فائدة
anniversary (n.)	ذكرى سنوية	agree (v.)	يوافق
distance (n.\v.)	مسافة / يبعد	disagree (v.)	يرفض
distant (adj.)	بعيد	improve (v.)	يحسن
giant (adj.)	عملاق	improvement (n.)	تحسين
gravity (n.)	جاذبية / خطورة	benefit (n.\v.)	فائدة / يستفيد - يفيد
zero gravity (n.)	انعدام الجاذبية	instant (adj.)	فورى
hope (n.)	امل	exploration (n.)	استكشاف
hopeful (adj.)	مفعم بالامل	explore (v.)	يستكشف
hopeless (adj.)	يائس	waste (v.)	يهدر / يضيع
horror (n.)	رعب	book (v.)	يحتجز
horrible (n.)	مرعب / فظيع	completely (adv.)	تماما
representative (n.)	مندوب / ممثل	materials (n.)	مواد / خامات
side effect (n.)	اثر جانبي	warming (n.)	دفء
spin (v.)	يدور حول محورة	global (adj.)	عالى
tourism (n.)	سياحة	globalisation (n.)	عولة
tourist (n.\adj.)	سائح / سياحى	air conditioning (n.)	تكييف
moon (n.)	قمر	rocket (n.)	صاروخ

password (n.)	كلمة سر	minus (prep.)	ناقص (-)
tap (n.)	صنبور	plus (prep.)	زائد (+)
sat-nav (v.)	بوصلة اتجاهات	cupboard (n.)	دولاب
directions (n.)	اتجاهات	grandparents (n.)	اجداد
Saturn (n.)	كوكب زحل	stand still (v.)	يثبت
firefighter (n.)	رجل اطفاء	finals (n.)	نهائيات
tank (n.)	خزان / دبابة	muscles (n.)	عضلات
repair (v.)	يصلح	immune system (n.)	جهاز المناعة

Prepositions حروف جر

look forward to	يتطلع الى	representative for	مندوب لـ
look down on	ينظر لاسفل على	at a height of	على ارتفاع
depend on	يعتمد على	suffer from	يعانى من
special for	خاص / مميز لـ	treatment for	علاج لـ
walk around	يسير حول	go for a walk	يذهب للتمشية
problem with	مشكلة بـ	compare.....to	يقارنبـ
problem of	مشكلة.....	on the moon	على القمر
attach to	يوصل بـ	frightened of	خائف من
get to	يصل الى	benefit from	يستفيد من
send into	يرسل الى	spend.....on	ينفق...على
a waste of....	مضيعة لـ	a leak in	تسرب فى
examine for	يفحص لـ	ways of +V-ing	طرق لـ
turn round	يدور حول	ways to+Inf	طرق لـ
provide.....with....	يمد/يزود.....بـ	arrive at	يصل الى
provide.....for....	يمد/يزود.....لـ	result of	نتيجة لـ
on the planet	على الكوكب	speak for	يتحدث بلسان

Expressions تعبيرات

How exciting!	كم هو مثير	a waste of money	مضيعة للمال
serious problem	مشكلة خطيرة	solve problems	يحل مشاكل
space missions	مهمات فضاء	climate change	تغير المناخ
do space walks	يقوم بالسير فالفضاء	A two-hour mission	مهمة لمدة ساعتين
particular level	مستوى محدد / معين	The African cup of Nations	كأس الامم الافريقية
space holidays	يكبر فى العمر	unexpected results	نتائج غير متوقعة
giant spinning wheel	عجلة غزل عملاقة	welcome visitors	يرحب بالزائرين
weightless sports	رياضات لا وزنية	The temperature control system	نظام التحكم فى درجة الحرارة
horrible side effects	اثار جانبية فظيعة	give medicine	يعطى ادوية
amazing feeling	شعور مذهل	do spins	يقوم بعمل دورات
improved everyone's lives	حسنت حيات الناس	electric cars	سيارات كهربائية
instant communication	اتصال فوري	save energy	يفر طاقة
modern technology	التكنولوجيا الحديثة	replace a broken part	يستبدل جزء مكسور
space exploration	استكشاف الفضاء		

Definitions تعريفات

- 1 - launch** يطلق (launcher - منصة إطلاق - launch a rocket, missile, a campaign, an attack)
- to send a spaceship into space.
- 2 - leak** يتسرب / تسرب (leak out - يسرب خبر / معلومة - leakage - منفس (به ثقب) - leaky)
- a small hole that liquid or gas gets out through.
- 3 - mission** مهمة / مامورية
- an important job that someone has been given to do.
- 4 - weightless** بلا وزن (weigh - وزن - weightlessness - انعدام الوزن)
- having no weight especially when you are floating in space.
- 5 - anniversary** ذكرى سنوية
- a date that is remembered because something important happened.
- 6 - distance** مسافة (distantly - بعيد - distant - يبعد - distance)
- the amount of space between two places,
- 7 - giant** عملاق
- much larger than other things of the same type.
- 8 - gravity** جاذبية (gravitation - انعدام الجاذبية - zero gravity - خطورة - gravity)
- what makes objects fall to the ground.
- 9 - hopeful** مفعم بالامل (hopeless - يائس - hopefully - بامل)
- thinking that something good will probably happen.
- 10 - horrible** فظيخ
- very unpleasant or unkind.
- 11 - representative** مندوب / ممثل عن
- someone who is chosen to do things, speak etc. for someone else.
- 12 - side effect** اثر جانبي
- the bad or unwanted effect something such as medicine has on your body.
- 13 - spin** يدور حول محورة (spinning - غزل - do spins - يقوم بعمل لفات)
- to turn round and around very quickly.
- 14 - tourism** سياحة (tourist - سائح / سياحي)
- the business of providing tourists with places to stay, things to do etc.

Language Functions

☛ Agreeing with an opinion:

- I (completely) agree.
- I couldn't agree more.
- I'd go along with that.
- That's true.
- (Yes) you're quite right.

☛ Disagreeing with an opinion:

- I (completely) disagree.
- I don't agree.
- I'm not (so) sure.
- That's (just) not true.



► **The + adj. + er.....the + adj. + er**

كلما.....كلما

The more +the more +

كلما زاد.....كلما زاد...

The more +the + adj. + er

كلما.....كلما

The + adj. + er.....the fewer \ less.....

كلما.....كلما قل..

Ex: The faster you run, the earlier you arrive.

Ex: The more people want to do something, the cheaper it will become.

Ex: The more you eat, the fatter you come.

Ex: The slower drivers travel, the fewer road accidents there will be.

► **reach** = to arrive at a place

يصل الى مكان

► **reach** = to move your hand or arm in order to touch □

تحرك يدك او ذراعك للمس شيء

► **reach** = to be big enough, long enough to get to a place

يكون كبيرا او طويلا بدرجة كافية للوصول الى مكان معين

► **reach** = to get to a particular level

يصل الى مستوى معين

► **reach** = to succeed in deciding something

يتوصل لقرار او اتفاق

► **reach** = to speak to someone, especially by telephone

يتوصل لشخص هاتفيا

► **reach** = to be seen or heard by sb.

شيء يصل للناس

► **reach** = to be seen or heard by sb.

شيء يصل للناس

► **reach for the star** (idiom)

حاول ان تصل للنجوم (لا تقل مستحيل)

= to try to be successful at something that is difficult.

► **reach out to + sb.** (phrasal v)

يساعد

= to show sb that you are interested in them and or want to help them. □

Ex: It took four days for the letter to reach me.

Ex: He threatened me and reached for his knife.

Ex: Will the ladder reach the roof?

Ex: Temperatures will reach 95 C.

Ex: They reached an agreement about solving their problem.

Ex: Do you know where I can reach him?

Ex: Through television and radio we are able to reach a wider audience.

Ex: The church needs to find new ways of reaching out to young people.

- ويمكن ان تستخدم reach كاسم بمعنى متناول .

Ex: The shot was well beyond the reach of the goalkeeper.

Ex: Cleaning fluids should be kept out of the reach of children.

► **reachable** (adj) = that is possible to reach. (لا يأتى بعدها اسم)

Ex: The farm is only reachable by car.

► **the suffix -ful and -less**

اللاحقات (تلتحق بنهاية الكلمة)

- اللاحقة full - تعنى ملىء بـ أما اللاحقة less - فتعنى بدون.

-ful		-less	
hopeful	مفعم بالامل	hopless	يائس
useful	مفيد	useless	بلا فائدة
fearful	مخيف	fearless	بلا خوف
painful	مؤلم	painless	بلا ألم
tasteful	لذيذ	tasteless	بلا طعم
powerful	قوى	powerless	بل قوة
-----	-----	homeless	بل ماوى
-----	-----	weightless	بلا وزن

Grammar

Passive Verbs: Past & Present الأفعال فى صيغة المبني للمجهول: الماضى و المضارع

تتكون الجملة فى المبني للمعلوم من:

Active → Subject + verb + object.
Ali wrote a letter.

أما فى المبني للمجهول فالجملة تتكون من:

Passive → Object + verb to be + P.P + by + doer.
A letter was written by Ali.

VERB TO BE

Infinitive	Present simple	Past simple	V- ing	P.P
be	am, is, are	was, were	being	been

صيغ المبني للمجهول فى الازمنة المختلفة:

TENSE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present simple	فعل فى المصدر او به s \ es	O + am, is, are + P.P
Past simple	تصريف ثانى او فعل به d \ ed	O + was, were + P.P
Present continuous	S + am, is, are + V-ing	O + am, is, are + being + P.P
Past continuous	S + was, were + V-ing	O + was, were + being + P.P
Present perfect	S + have \ has + P.P	O + have \ has + been + P.P
Past perfect	S + had + P.P	O + had + been + P.P
Future simple	S + will + Inf.	O + will + be + P.P
Future perfect	S + will + have + P.P	O + will + have been + P.P
Modal verbs	S + can, could, must might, may + Inf.	O + can, could, must might, may + be + P.P

هناك جمل تتكون من جملتين مثل:

Ex: We believe that Al Zamalik will win the match.

Ex: They reported a man was killed.

وهذه الجمل تاتى مع هذه الافعال:

know / believe / fear / say / think / predict / agree / hope / consider / allege / claim
Suggest \ suppose.

وهذه الجمل يكون تحويلها للمجهول كالاتى:

(1) إذا بدأت الجملة بـ It فإنه:

It is \ was + P.P + that.....

Ex: It is believed that El Zamalek will win the match.

Ex: It was reported a man was killed.

(2) إذا بدأت الجملة بفاعل الجملة الثانية فإنه:

Sub. + is \ are + P.P. + to + Inf.
Sub. + was \ were + P.P. + to + have + P.P

إذا كانت الجملة الثانية مضارع او مستقبل
إذا كانت الجملة الثانية ماضى

Ex: Al Zamalik is believed to win the next match.

Ex: A man was reported to have been killed.

ملاحظات:

إذا كانت الجملة تبدأ بـ **Nobody / No one** نحول **ever** إلى **never** إن وجدت. وفى حالة عدم وجودها ننفى بـ **not** (تاتى **ever** فى المعلوم وتاتى **never** فى المجهول)

Ex: Nobody has ever beaten me in Chess.

I have never been beaten in Chess.

هناك جمل تحتوي على مفعولين وعند البدء بالفعول الثانى الغير عاقل لإننا نضع **for \ to** قبل المفعول الاول.

والأفعال التى تأخذ حرف الجر **to** هى:

give / offer / pass / write / sell / bring / show / lend / read / hand / deliver / tell / owe / pay

والأفعال التى تأخذ حرف الجر **for** هى:

fetch / build / get / find / buy / save / leave / keep / call / cut / make / book

Ex: *We bought Mai a mobile.*

A mobile was bought for Mai.

يمكن أن نستخدم الفعل **get** بدلا من **verb to be** عند التحويل إلى مبنى للمجهول خاصة مع التصريف الثالث من الأفعال الآتية:

destroy / damage / arrest / divorce / beat / burn / marry / catch / kill / lose

Ex: *He was arrested yesterday. = He got arrested yesterday.*

الأفعال الآتية **make/see/let/hear/watch** يليها مفعول ثم مصدر و عند التحويل إلى مبنى للمجهول نستخدم **to**

قبل المصدر. أما الفعل **let** يتحول إلى **allowed to**

(Active) S. + make \ see \ hear \ watch \ let + obj. + Inf.

(Passive) O. + V. to be + made \ seen \ heard \ watched + to + Inf.

Ex: *He made us do it again.*

We were made to do it again.

في حالة وجود ظرف **adverb** يوضع قبل التصريف الثالث في حالة المبنى للمجهول.

Ex: *You must do your homework accurately.*

Your homework must be accurately done.

في حالة الأفعال المتبوعة بـ **(to + inf.)** نستخدم **(to be + p.p.)** عند التحويل إلى مبنى للمجهول.

Ex: *I want you to tell me the truth.*

I want to be told the truth.

في حالة الأفعال المتبوعة بـ **(v. + ing)** نستخدم **(being + p.p.)** في المبنى للمجهول.

Ex: *I hate people telling me lies..*

I hate being told lies.

إذا كان الفاعل والفعول واحد مع الفعل **let** نستخدم ضمير منعكس ثم **be** ثم **p.p** و الضمائر المنعكسة هى:

myself / himself / herself / itself / ourselves / themselves / yourself / yourselves

Ex: *He doesn't let others laugh at him.*

He doesn't let himself be laughed at.

هناك بعض الاعمال يقوم الآخرون بعملها لنا وتسمى هذه القاعدة بالسببية وهى:

have \ has
S. + had + something + P.P
will have

Ex: *I will have my car repaired tomorrow.*

إذا بدأنا الجملة بفاعل غير عاقل ثم فعل **need** فانه:

Something + need + V-ing \ to be + P.P

Ex: *This house needs demolishing \ to be demolished.*

عند تحويل الاسئلة من مبنى للمعلوم الى مبنى للمجهول فإن كل أدوات الاستفهام تظل كما هى ما عدا **who** تحول إلى **By**

whom....? او who.....by?

Ex: *Who built the pyramids?*

By whom were the pyramids built? = Who were the pyramids built by?

الأفعال الازمة (التى لا يأتى بعدها مفعول) لا تبني للمبنى للمجهول مثل:

happen, harden, grow ينمو , **occur, rise** ترتفع , **die, go, arrive, fall, wait, yawn**

work, disappear, vanish يختفى , **cry**.

Ex: *The accident happened yesterday.* NOT Ex: *The accident was happened yesterday. (X)*

Homework

1) Choose the correct answer:

1. The car stopped because there was a.....in the petrol tank.
a. lake b. lack c. leak d. lock
2. Our air conditioning has broken down, but someone is coming to.....it tomorrow.
a. reform b. repair c. pair d. break
3. The doctor.....me carefully before he gave me the medicine.
a. killed b. launched c. examined d. repaired
4. Computer passwords should always be..... You should never tell anyone.
a. public b. common c. clear d. secret
5. The astronauts went on a two-hour.....to replace a broken part.
a. space walk b. space holiday c. space tourism d. space sleep
6. Some drivers have a sat-nav.....in their cars to help them find directions,
a. order b. discipline c. system d. semsem
7. The rocket is going to reach the moon on Tuesday. Everyone watched it.....on TV.
a. launching b. punching c. lashing d. leaking
8. Space.....can take several years.
a. motions b. missions c. mansions d. missiles
9. It took them nearly an hour to.....the top of the mountain.
a. arrive b. catch c. get d. reach
10. The moon has less.....than the earth, so you could jump much higher there.
a. cavity b. gravity c. creativity d. activity
11. Today is the 50thof when my grandparents were married.
a. university b. anniversary c. universally d. monthly
12.is very important for Egypt, so we should always welcome visitors.
a. Terrorism b. Tourism c. Tortoise d. Turtle
13. The.....between Cairo and London is 3, 500 kilometres.
a. distant b. distance c. space d. balance
14. When you are.....in space, it must be very difficult to stand still.
a. weight b. weightless c. weightlessness d. weigh
15. Some basketball players can.....the ball on one finger.
a. orbit b. catch c. speak d. spin
17. This phone doesn't work. It is completely.....
a. useful b. useless c. using d. use
18. Ahmed worked really hard for the exam. We are.....that he has done very well.
a. hopeful b. hopeless c. hope d. helpless
19. I told my little brother not to worry, because when the dentist looks at your teeth, it is.....
a. useful b. hopeful c. useless d. painful
20. my grandfather was ill, but the doctor gave him somemedicine and now he feels fine.
a. useless b. painful c. powerful d. careless
21. The ladder can.....the top of the wall.
a. reach b. arrive c. get d. carry
22. Temperatures in the desert can.....50 C.
a. reach b. arrive c. get d. carry

23. Space tourists will be flown to a space station by.....
 a. planes b. boats c. sapceships d. cars
24. The spacestation itself will be like a giant.....wheel.
 a. splitting b. spinning c. driving d. car
25. Things fall down to the ground because of.....
 a. zero gravity b. gravity c. cavity d. activity
26. This medicine is safe. It has no.....effects.
 a. beside b. aside c. inside d. side
27. It is an amazing feeling to look.....on the earth as it spins below you.
 a. after b. for c. up d. down
28.is an important source of national income in Egypt.
 a. Tourism b. Terrorism c. Gravity d. Space
29. Tarek is not frightened of anything. He is.....
 a. afraid b. fear c. fearful d. fearless
30. My phone can do many things. It is really.....
 a. useful b. useless c. painful d. tasteful
31. I don't like this sandwich. It is completely.....
 a. useful b. useless c. painful d. tasteful
32. My tooth hurts. It is really.....
 a. useful b. useless c. painful d. tasteful
33. The car can go very fast. It is extremely.....
 a. fearful b. painful c. useless d. powerful
34. Countries spend a lot of money on space.....
 a. exportation b. exploration c. explosion d. fusion
35. Modern technology has.....everyone's lives.
 a. proved b. removed c. improved d. deprived
36. Everyone.....from space technology in their everyday lives.
 a. fits b. benefits c. steals d. suffers
37. In order to know what is wrong, the doctor must the patient.
 a. search b. steal c. examine d. think
38. Modern technologies such as the mobile phone make easier.
 a. procedure b. opinion c. process d. communication
39. The ride at the amusement park went down so fast that my body felt
 a. weightless b. purple c. disguised d. fascinating
40. Details of the plan were leaked.....
 a. out b. to c. in d. for
41. The rain was so heavy that the water wheel for three days.
 a. launched b. leaked c. spun d. washed
42. is the force that keeps objects on earth.
 a. gravity b. gymnastics c. spoke d. gravy
43. The doctor assured us that there would be no from the medicine.
 a. systems b. feeling c. side effects d. fashioning
44. The fashion house is now some new winter dresses.
 a. launching b. lunching c. condemning d. coaching
45. Today is the tenth.....of when we moved into our house.
 a. antiquity b. anniversary c. date d. year
46. The.....between Aswan and Luxor is about 200 kilometres.
 a. district b. long c. far d. distance

47. I need a plumber to fix the.....tap.
a. leak b. leakage c. leaky d. lucky
48. You must be careful when you take that medicine because it may have side.....
a. affects b. effects c. affection d. effective
49. I didn't like the soup without salt. I thought it was.....
a. tasted b. tasty c. teased d. tasteful
50. There is water on the floor. There must be a.....from the washing machine.
a. luck b. lock c. leak d. lake
51. That is a.....hotel! It's the biggest building in the city.
a. giant b. mass c. hostile d. tiny
52. The colour of this new car is..... I don't like it at all.
a. ideal b. hopeless c. horrible d. ordinary
53. It takes many hours for the rocket to.....the Space Station.
a. get b. go c. reach d. travel
54. The rocket will be.....into space tomorrow morning.
a. launched b. taken c. kept d. led
55. Egypt.....the final of the African Cup of Nations in 2017.
a. got b. arrived c. qualified d. reached
56.means very bad or unkind.
a. Hopeful b. Horrible c. Useful d. Powerful
57. A\An.....is someone who is chosen to do things, speak etc, for someone else.
a. actor b. astronaut c. representative d. politician
58.is a date that is remembered because something important happened.
a. Universally b. Anniversary c. University d. Universal
59. To.....means to turn around and around very quickly.
a. orbit b. launch c. spin d. leak
60.means very big.
a. Dwarf b. Giant c. Google d. Tiny
70.is the force that makes object fall to the ground.
a. Cavity b. Gravity c. Activity d. Attraction
71. The amount of space between two places is called.....
a. distance b. assistance c. persistence d. distant
72.is the business of providing tourists with places to stay, things to do etc.
a. Mechanism b. Terrorism c. Carpentry d. Tourism
73. There is a problem.....the temperature control system.
a. of b. with c. on d. for
74. Astronauts are well trained to.....space walks.
a. do b. make c. reach d. get
79. Always keep dangerous medicines out of the.....of children.
a. arrival b. reach c. beach d. get
80. He has no place to live in. He is.....
a. homeless b. useless c. painless d. careless
81. The contents of the report were.....to the press.
a. laked b. locked c. leaked d. licked
82. They.....a campaign to help the poor.
a. launched b. leaked c. spun d. orbited
83. The government takes.....steps towards achieving social welfare.
a. giant b. ginger c. tiny d. leaky
84. I don't think you realize the.....of the situation.
a. gravity b. zero gravity c. cavity d. graveyard

85. A lot of bread.....at the baker's today.

- a. is baking b. is being baked c. has baked d. will bake

86. The amount of energy that we use every year must.....

- a. reduced b. be reduced c. been reduced d. reduce

87. I've seen the plans. Two new hotels.....near the beach next year.

- a. will build b. will be built c. will have built d. build

88. Don't put those old batteries in the bin. They should.....to a special place.

- a. should have taken b. should take c. should be taken d. be taken

89. Many new ways of saving energy.....by scientists at the moment.

- a. are developing b. have been developed c. are being developed d. develop

90. Those toys.....in many shops near here.

- a. sold b. have sold c. are sold d. are selling

91. I can't wait for the holidays. My parents.....my sisters and me to our favourite beach.

- a. are taken b. are taking c. will have been taken d. take

92. A new school.....near my home and it will be open next year.

- a. will build b. was building c. is building d. is being built

93. Hundreds of sailing boats.....from the beach yesterday. They looked really lovely.

- a. can be seen b. are seen c. could be seen d. were being seen

94. The teacher says that a new subject.....next week.

- a. is taught b. will be taught
c. will teach d. is going to teach

95. Our rubbish.....every week.

- a. are collected b. is collected c. was collecting d. is collecting

96. A lot more birds.....on the shore this year.

- a. have been seen b. have seen c. had been seen d. saw

97. We can't get on the plane yet because it.....

- a. is cleaning b. is cleaned c. has been cleaned d. is being cleaned

98. When the police arrived at the bank, they realized that the money.....

- a. had taken b. has been taken c. had been taken d. has taken

99. Yesterday, we.....our roof repaired after the storm.

- a. have had b. have c. have to have d. had to have

100. The hotel rooms.....next month.

- a. will decorate b. will be decorated c. will have decorated d. decorates

101. The internet.....everywhere.

- a. is used b. is using c. uses d. has used

102. Let's hurry; the plane is going to.....off

- a. take b. be taken c. have taken d. is taking

103. A lot of fast food.....every day.

- a. has sold b. has been sold c. is sold d. sells

104. English.....everywhere.

- a. speaks b. is being spoken c. is spoken d. has spoken

105. I think fewer letters.....in the future.

- a. will write b. will have written c. will be written d. are writing

106. School rules.....

- a. have followed b. have to be followed c. have to follow d. be followed

107. Could your maths problem.....?

- a. solved b. to be solved c. be solved d. solve

108. Is the exercise.....now?

- a. doing b. done c. being done d. been done

109. Don't let yourself.....by swindlers and imposters.

- a. deceive b. be deceived c. to be deceived d. deceiving

110. Tomorrow I will have my car.....

- a. to repair b. be repaired c. repairing d. repaired

111. The children.....to the park today.

- a. are taking b. are being taken c. are been taken d. took

112. There is a hole in the roof, which needs.....at.

- a. to be looked b. to have looked c. to look d. looked

113. Your homework.....tomorrow.

- a. will have marked b. will be marked c. will mark d. marked

114. All the students.....a lot of training before they sail the boats.

- a. are giving b. are given c. have given d. be giving

2) Read the following passage , then answer the questions:

Dreams have interested, puzzled, and even frightened people. They thought that dreams always came true, and that they came from something outside the person dreaming. Since the end of the 19th century, physicians, psychologists and other scientists have been studying dreams. Although they still have much to learn, they think that dreams are created by the dreamer granted, or in which they become somebody they would like to be. These are wish-fulfilling dreams. They occasionally dream they are being chased by robbers, or are in danger from fire or flood. These frightening dreams are called nightmares. People usually have nightmares when they are upset about something.

Studies about the causes of dreams show many reasons. For example, changes in the brain occur during sleep, and these are probably related to dreaming. But no one knows enough yet about the brain changes in dreaming to say exactly what they are. A dreamer's health affects his dreams. A person who is ill will have different kinds of dreams from those of one who is well. If a person is hungry, or cold, or tired, his dreams may include these feelings. In addition, a large part of any dream comes from the events of the day before. Often the person or situations in a night dream are those the dreamer met during the day. The feelings of happiness or disappointment which came out in dreams were probably in the dreamer before. All that dream is to give them an outlet.

1- Changes in the brain take place

- a. by day b. at night c. during sleep d. during meals

2- is a terrible dream.

- a. A day-dream b. A nightmare c. A dreamer d. A dreamland

3- The underlined word (them) refers to

- a. dreams b. dreamers c. nightmares d. feelings

4- We have been studying dreams for

- a. 50 years b. 200 years c. centuries d. more than a century

5. An.....is a way of expressing or getting rid of feelings.

- a. outlet b. outside c. upset d. out

6. A wish-fulfilling dream is a.....dream.

- a. good b. bad c. terrible d. horrible

7. The writer compares two different views concerning dreams. Write them in not more than two sentences.

8. Find words in the passage which mean:

a) making desires and hopes true

b) worried, sad or unhappy.

9. Mention two only of the reasons for dreams.

10. Do you think all people have the same dreams? Why? Why not?

4) Finish the following dialogue:

Salesman : Can I help you, Madam ?

Lady : Well, it depends : Do you do watch repairs ?

Salesman : 1).....?

Lady : Could you examine my watch, please? It's stopped.

Salesman : 2).....?

Lady : Only yesterday ; can you repair it ?

Salesman : Yes, I can, but I'm afraid you'll have to leave it.

Lady : All right. When will it be ready?

Salesman : 3)..... Now you need a receipt.

Lady : Ok 4).....?

Salesman : No, you won't be able to get the watch without it.

Lady : 5).....?

Salesman : I can't tell you how much until I repair it.

Lady : Ok, do your best it is a precious watch.

Salesman : 6).....

5) Write a paragraph of 120 words about ONE (1) only of the following:

a) How modern technology has improved every one's lives.

b) Space exploration.

Translation

6) a) Translate into Arabic :

1- Never say impossible but always try to reach the stars.

2- Some people think that more money should be spent on education and health and less on new technology.

b) Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English :

١- لا ادري كيف سرب هذا الخبر الى وسائل الاعلام .

٢- كلما اراد الناس فعل شيئا كلما اصبح أرخص.

Unit 8

Arthur C. Clarke:
2001: A Space Odyssey

Listening

Narrator: Today, I'm going to give a talk about one of the most famous writers of science fiction: Arthur C. Clarke. He was born in England in 1917, the son of a farmer. He was always interested in science, but his father died and his family did not have much money, so Clarke had to find work as soon as he finished school. He got a job with the government, although he wrote for science magazines in his free time. He was able to develop his skills in science during the Second World War, when he worked with radar. This system was being used for the first time, to help planes to land. Many science articles by Clarke had been published in magazines before the war ended. He predicted satellite television in one article. Later, his science fiction stories were also published in magazines.

Clarke decided to go to university after the war and he graduated in maths and physics. He became the editor of a science magazine and continued to write articles and stories. Many of his stories were about people travelling into space in rockets. Soon he was famous as a writer and also as a scientific consultant. Scientists and technicians knew that Clarke could be asked about spaceships and satellites, and he was happy to talk about his ideas.

In 1964, Clarke was asked to work on a film for the famous director Stanley Kubrick. The director wanted to make a film of one of Clarke's short stories. This became 2001: A Space Odyssey. The film, about travelling far into space, has been watched by many millions of people since it was made in 1968.

After a serious illness, Clarke was in a wheelchair for many years and he died in 2008, but he is remembered as a great scientist as well as a writer. The Arthur C Clarke Foundation has promoted the use of technology to improve the quality of life in developing countries, and there are now parts of space that have been named after him.

Reading
2001: A Space Odyssey

Only two men were awake on the spaceship Discovery. Their names were David Bowman and Frank Poole. Their job was to look after the spaceship and the three other astronauts, who were sleeping during the long journey to the planet Saturn. Bowman and Poole were helped by Hal, an extremely intelligent computer. One morning, Poole was watching a video message that had been sent to him by his family on earth. It was interrupted by Hal, who said that part AE35 of the spaceship was about to fail. Part AE35 was important because it sent messages to earth.

Poole went outside the spaceship to replace the part. He was used to working in zero-gravity so he changed the part easily. However, when Bowman checked the old part later, he found nothing wrong. That afternoon, Hal told them that the new part AE35 was also about to fail. The men were not used to hearing that there were problems so they contacted earth. They were told that something was wrong with Hal and that they should turn the computer off. Suddenly, they lost contact with earth. Part AE35 was not working.

Poole decided to replace the new part AE35, but while he was outside, the spaceship suddenly moved forward and hit him. He was killed. Bowman was horrified and wondered if Poole was killed by Hal. He decided to wake up the other astronauts, but to do this, he needed Hal's help. At first, Hal refused, but when Bowman threatened to cut Hal's wires, the computer finally agreed.

Bowman started to wake up the other astronauts but suddenly he felt the inside of the spaceship become very cold. The pressure inside the spaceship was falling fast and all the air was disappearing. Bowman ran to an emergency room so he could breathe some oxygen. He now understood that the computer that had been built to help him was trying to kill him. He had to find Hal's controls so that he could turn off the computer.

VOCABULARY

odyssey (n.)	ملحمة	planets (n.)	كواكب
science (n.)	علم	promote (v.)	يرقى / ينقل
scientist (n.)	عالم	promotion (n.)	ترقية / نقل
scientific (adj.)	علمي	improve (v.)	يحسن
scientifically (adv.)	بطريقة علمية	improvement (n.)	تحسين
fiction (n.)	خيال	quality (n.)	جودة
fictional (adj.)	خيالي	politics (n.)	سياسة
fictionally (adv.)	بطريقة خيالية	politician (n.)	شخص سياسي
government (n.)	حكومة	archaeology (n.)	علم الآثار
free time (n.)	وقت فراغ	archaeologist (n.)	عالم آثار
develop (v.)	يطور / ينمي	chemicals (n.)	مواد كيميائية
developed (adj.)	متطور	chemistry (n.)	كيمياء
developing (adj.)	نامي	chemist (n.)	عالم كيمياء / صيدلي
development (n.)	تطور / تنمية	chemically (adv.)	كيميائيا
radar (n.)	رادار	emergency (n.\adj)	طوارئ / طارئ
system (n.)	نظام	interrupt (v.)	يقاطع
articles (n.)	مقالات / أدوات	interruption (n.)	مقاطعة
publish (v.)	ينشر	pressure (n.)	ضغط
later (adv.)	فيما بعد	pressurize (v.)	يضغط
war (n.)	حرب	pressurized (adj.)	مضغوط
graduate (n.\v.)	خريج / يتخرج	controls (n.)	مفاتيح التحكم
maths (n.)	رياضيات	horror (n.)	رعب
physics (n.)	فيزياء	horrify (v.)	يرعب
physicist (n.)	عالم فيزياء	horrified (adj.)	مرعوب
editor (n.)	محرر صحفي	threaten (v.)	يهدد
rockets (n.)	صواريخ	threat (n.)	تهديد
consult (v.)	يستشير	threatened (adj.)	مهدد
consultancy (n.)	مكتب استشارات	threatening (adj.)	تهديدي
consultant (n.)	مستشار	threateningly (adv.)	بتهديد
consultation (n.)	تساو	zero gravity (n.)	انعدام الجاذبية
technology (n.)	تكنولوجيا	awake (adj.)	مستيقظ
technical (adj.)	تقني	extremely (adv.)	للغاية
technician (n.)	فني (شخص)	fail (v.)	يفشل
spaceship (n.)	سفينة فضاء	failure (n.)	فشل
director (n.)	مخرج / مدير	replace (v.)	يستبدل
direct (v.)	يخرج / يوجه	check (v.)	يفحص
wheelchair (n.)	كرسي متحرك	contact (v.)	يتواصل
foundation (n.)	تأسيس	wonder (v.)	يتساءل
found (v.)	يؤسس	wires (n.)	اسلاك
electricity (n.)	كهرباء	wireless (adj.)	هوائي / لاسلكي
electric (adj.)	كهربائي	disappear (v.)	يختفي
electrician (n.)	كهربائي (شخص)	disappearance (n.)	اختفاء
electrify (v.)	يكهرب	nearby (adj.)	قريب

breathe (v.)	يتنفس	expert (n.)	خبير
breath (n.)	نفس	advertise (v.)	يعلن
survive (v.)	يحيى/ ينجو	advertisement (n.)	إعلان
survivor (n.)	ناجى	laboratory (n.)	معمل
survival (n.)	نجاة	measure (v.)	يقيس
common (adj.)	معروف/ شائع	popular (adj.)	مشهور/ محبوب
downside (adj.)	عيب	theatre (n.)	مسرح
benefit (n.\v.)	فائدة/ يستفيد/ يفيد	actors (n.)	ممثلين
beneficial (adj.)	ذو فائدة	library (n.)	مكتبة
structure (n.)	تركيب	flat (n.)	شقة
equipment (n.)	معدات	competition (n.)	منافسة
position (n.)	مكانة/ موضع	compete (v.)	ينافس
recover (v.)	يشفى	ambulance (n.)	إسعاف
recovery (n.)	شفاء	shopkeeper (n.)	بائع
tent (n.)	خيمة	pay (v.)	يدفع
exit (n.\v.)	خروج/ يخرج	payment (n.)	دفع
pollution (n.)	تلوث	penfriend (n.)	صديق مراسلة
recharge (v.)	يشحن	occur (v.)	يحدث

Prepositions حروف جر

look after	يعتنى بـ	expert in	خبير فى
turn on	يشغل	on the internet	على الانترنت
turn off	يطفىء/ يغلق	in a wheelchair	فى كرسى متحرك
contact with	يتواصل مع	name after	يسمى باسم
wake up	يستيقظ	famous for	مشهور بـ
move forward	يتحرك للامام	be able to	قادر على
deal with	يتعامل مع	cut down	يقطع/ يقلل
travel across	يسافر عبر	easy for	سهل لـ

Expressions تعبيرات

science fiction	خيال علمى	cut wires	يقطع الاسلاك
the second world war	الحرب العالمية الثانية	space exploration	إستكشاف الفضاء
scientific consultant	مستشار علمى	remote control	جهاز تحكم عن بعد
make a film	يقوم بعمل فيلم	pros and cons	مميزات وعيوب
serious illness	مرض خطير	social media	وسائل تواصل اجتماعى
developing countries	دول نامية	a space shuttle	مكوك فضاء
developed countries	دول متقدمة	practical work	عمل عملى
come true	يتحقق	positive side	جانب ايجابى
electrical goods	بضائع كهربائية	rubbish bags	أكياس القمامة
electric cars	سيارات كهربائية	poisonous snake	ثعبان سام
emergency room	غرفة طوارئ	artificial intelligence	ذكاء صناعى
emergency exit	مخرج طوارئ	radio waves	موجات لاسلكية

تعريفات Definitions

- 1- consultant** (استشارة consultation – مكتب استشارات consultancy – يستشير consult) مستشار
- someone with a lot of experience in a subject whose job is to give advice about it.
- 2- director** مخرج / مدير
- someone who gives instructions to actors and other people in a film.
(إدارة directorate – توجيهي/ توجيهات directive – اتجاه direction – يوجه direct)
- 3- physics** علم الفيزياء (عالم فيزياء physicist)
- the science that deals with the structure of objects and substance.
- 4- radar** رادار
- a method of finding the position of things such as planes by sending out radio waves.
- 5- technician** فنى (تقنية technology – فنيا technically – فى technical)
- someone who does practical work connected with science or technology.
- 6- foundation** مؤسس (مؤسس founder – يؤسس found\founded\founder) مؤسسة / تأسيس
- an organization that gives money for special purposes.
- 7- be about to** على وشك ان
- to be ready to start doing something.
- 8- emergency** مخرج طوارئ (emergency exit – غرفة طوارئ emergency room)
- an unexpected and dangerous situation that must be dealt with immediately.
- 9- interrupt** يقطع (مقاطعة interruption)
- To stop someone while they are speaking or doing something by suddenly saying or doing something yourself.
- 10- pressure** ضغط (مضغوط pressurized – يضغط pressurize)
- the force that a gas or liquid has when it is inside a container or place.
- 11- controls** مفتاح تحكم
- one of the parts of a machine, television etc that you use to make it work.
- 12- horrified** مرعوب (مفجع/ اليم horrific – يرعب horrify – رعب horror)
- to be shocked very much.
- 13- threaten** يهدد (تهديد threaten – مهدد threatening)
- to tell someone that you will hurt them or cause serious problems for them if they do not do what you want.
- 14- zero- gravity** انعدام الجاذبية (جاذبية gravity)
- have no gravity.
- 15- artificial intelligence** ذكاء صناعي
- the science of how to make computers do things that usually need human intelligence.



The adverb About

1- about = nearby

Ex: There's a message for Ahmed. Is he about?

2- about = almost

Ex: Breakfast is just about ready.

3- about (be about to) = ready to start doing something

Ex: I was about to go out when my friend arrived.

4- about = a little more or less than a number or amount.

Ex: There were about 100 people in the theatre.

5- about = around (in many different directions or in different parts of a place)

Ex: People were lying about on the floor.

► the suffix -ian and -ist

اللاحقات (تلحق بنهاية الكلمة)

- الكثير من كلمات الوظائف تنتهى باللاحقات -ian | -ist

-ian		-ist	
technician	فنى	archaeologist	عالم اثار
electrician	كهربائى	chemist	صيدلى
politician	سياسى	biologist	عالم احياء
musician	عازف	scientist	عالم
optician	بائع نظارات	artist	فنان

Language Functions

☛ Talking about advantages and disadvantages التحدث عن المميزات والعيوب

- What are the pros and cons?
- What is the advantage\disadvantage of that?
- What is the benefit\downside of that?
- One negative\positive side is that.....
- A positive\ negative side to that is.....
- Another advantage\downside is that.....

Language Notes

► S+ am, is, are + used to + V-ing

معتاد على (عمل شيء فى المضارع)

► S+ was, were + used to + V-ing

معتاد على (عمل شيء فى الماضى)

► S+ used to + Inf.

اعتاد على (عمل شيء فى الماضى ولا يفعله الان)

Ex: Asmaa is used to going to the cinema every week.

Ex: He was used to working in zero-gravity so he changed the part easily.

Ex: When I was young, I used to drink milk but now I don't.

- ▶ **horror** رعب
- ▶ **horrify** يزعج
- ▶ **horrified** مرعوب
- ▶ **horrifying** مزعج
- ▶ **horrific** فظيخ ومؤسف

Ex: I watched a horror film on TV yesterday.

Ex: I was horrified when I found out how much the repairs were going to cost.

Ex: It was a horrific accident.

- ▶ **fail - failed - failed**

fail = to be unsuccessful in doing something. يفشل / يرسب

fail = to decide that someone has not passed a test. يرسب

fail = to stop working يتعطل / يتوقف

- ▶ **failure** فشل / فاشل

Ex: I failed my biology test.

Ex: The examiner told me he was going to fail me.

Ex: The engine failed just after the plane took off.

Ex: I feel like such a failure.

Ex: He suffers from a kidney failure.

– لاحظ الافعال المشابهة للفعل fail

- ▶ **fail - failed - failed**
- ▶ **fall - fell - fallen** يسقط
- ▶ **fell - felled - felled** يقطع (شجرة)
- ▶ **feel - felt - felt** يشعر
- ▶ **fill - filled - filled** يملأ

Ex: The book fell from his hands.

Ex: More than 50 trees were felled.

Ex: All the applicants were asked to fill in a form.

- ▶ **cosult** يستشير
- ▶ **consultant** مستشار / استشارى
- ▶ **consultation** استشارة
- ▶ **consultancy** مكتب استشارات

Ex: Consult your lawyer if the problems continues.

Ex: My uncle is the president's consultant on economic affairs.

Ex: The decision was taken after close consultation with local residents.

Ex: My brother works for a computer consultancy.

– ولكن تذكر ان:

- ▶ **consule** قنصل
- ▶ **consulate** قنصلية



□ – تم شرح المبنى للمجهول بالتفصيل فى الوحدة السابقة.

□

Homework

1) Choose the correct answer

1. We saw a film being made by a famous.....today.
a. teacher b. director c. consultant d. technician
2. The company needed help with its advertising so they asked a.....to work with them.
a. teacher b. director c. consultant d. technician
3. Most planes can land in any type of weather because the pilots can use.....
a. radar b. var c. camera d. video
4. My cousin is aand works in the laboratory of a big company that makes medicine.
a. teacher b. director c. consultant d. chemist
5. We learnt how to measure energy in our.....lesson today.
a. Arabic b. PE c. history d. physics
6. The.....for this computer game don't work. Can I try yours?
a. protocols b. centres c. controls d. roles
7. The children were.....to find a poisonous snake in their tent.
a. happy b. horrified c. horrifying d. horror
8. The teacher said that we should never.....her while she is talking.
a. shut b. cut c. corrupt d. interrupt
9. In....., things that are not attached to something start to float away.
a. gravity b. zero-gravity c. gravitation d. gravitate
10. Air.....is usually high in good weather and low in bad weather.
a. press b. measure c. pressure d. treasure
11. The shopkeeper.....to call the police when the man refused to pay.
a. threatened b. promised c. pressed d. played
12. What are theand cons of travelling by bus across Egypt?
a. bruises b. press c. pros d. bras
13. Ships can see where to go at night and in bad weather because they have.....
a. radar b. rafts c. poles d. positions
14. The secretary.....the teacher's lesson to say that he had an important phone call.
a. interrupted b. interpreted c. broke d. invited
15. The policeman.....me to arrest the man because he was scaring people.
a. threatened b. warned c. offered d. shouted
16. You must work hard for the exam or you might.....
a. fail b. feel c. fall d. fill
17. We don't know much about the bottom of the oceans because some of them have not been.....
a. explained b. explored c. existed d. found
18. You should only phone 123 in a/an.....
a. emotion b. emergency c. ambulance d. situation
19. I can't talk to you now because I am.....to go out.
a. about b. off c. over d. away
20. We can't play this computer game because the.....don't work.
a. contents b. crew c. crops d. controls

21. The teacher asked us to discuss the pros and.....of artificial intelligence.
a. benefits b. cons c. advantages d. contents
22.is the study of energy, sound, light etc.
a. Physics b. Chemicals c. Geography d. Political science
23. Fawzi enjoys working at the hotel, but the.....is that it is a long way from his home.
a. downside b. upside c. benefit d. pros
24. We use.....exit in time of danger.
a. merge b. frequency c. emergency d. emigration
25. The gang sent him a.....letter yesterday.
a. threaten b. threatened c. threatening d. thread
26. My brother wants to be a.....
a. politics b. policy c. politician d. political
27. After studying ancient history, Mona became an.....
a. actor b. ambassador c. archaeologist d. optician
28. We want to buy some medicine from the.....
a. chemistry b. chemist's c. chemicals d. chemically
29. If you like working with electrical goods, you should become an.....
a. electric b. electrical c. electrify d. electrician
30. I like reading science.....stories.
a. faction b. fact c. fiction d. fraction
31.intelligence is the science of how to make computers do things that usually need human intelligence.
a. Natural b. Ordinary c. Artificial d. Facial
32. What is the.....of using social media for too long hours?
a. side b. upside c. seaside d. downside
33.is a very difficult subject for some students.
a. Physics b. Phase c. Phrase d. Basics
34. Justice and equality are the.....of any democracy.
a. finding b. foundation c. fountain d. founding
35.your doctor if the headaches continue.
a. Insult b. Consul c. Consult d. Connect
36. Youssif Shaheen is a very famous Egyptian.....
a. doctor b. inspector c. coach d. director
37.is a long journey full of experiences.
a. Odyssey b. Odds c. Oddly d. Odious
38. I was.....to lend him the money.
a. pressed b. impressed c. pressurized d. moisturized
39. I have been under a lot of.....at work recently.
a. pleasure b. stress c. press d. pressure
40. It was a.....accident.
a. horror b. horrified c. horrific d. horrifying
41. She stared at him in.....
a. horror b. horrified c. horrific d. horrifying

42. The engine.....just after the plane took off.
a. failed b. felt c. fell d. felled
43. I found it very difficult to.....my temper sometimes.
a. fail b. control c. horrify d. enrol
44. All his plans ended in
a. fail b. falling c. failure d. feeling
45. He works as a marketing.....
a. consul b. consultant c. counciler d. consultancy
46. He is seeking a.....role in energy policy.
a. directorate b. director c. directive d. direction
47. Your quick response in an.....could be a lifesaver.
a. emergent b. emergency c. elegancy d. emerge
48. The baby was named.....his grandfather's name.
a. on b. at c. out d. after
49. Don't let fear and.....affect your ambitions.
a. fail b. failure c. feel d. fill
50. Lunch is just.....ready.
a. about b. for c. to d. in
51. After the storm some scientists.....to the beach to see what had happened.
a. sent b. were sent c. were sending d. send
52. This beach.....by thousands of tourists every year.
a. used b. is using c. is used d. was used
53. Ito the tennis competition by the club's bus.
a. was taken b. took c. had taken d. have taken
54. The house.....when my father came home.
a. was decorating b. was being decorated c. had decorated d. decorated
55. New bridges.....in Cairo recently.
a. had been built b. have built c. had built d. have been built
56. The computer.....by the teacher yesterday.
a. checked b. had checked c. was checked d. is checked
57. The house.....before the party.
a. had been decorated b. has been decorated
c. was decorating d. is decorated
58. How many people.....to walk on the moon?
a. have sent b. have been sent
c. sent d. were sending
59. When father returned home, his dinner.....
a. was making b. was being made
c. had made d. is being made
60. I had waited at the garage until my car.....
a. repaired b. was repairing c. was repaired d. had repaired
61. My mobile.....in the sports club yesterday.
a. was lost b. was losing c. has lost d. got lost

62. By last summer, the new factory.....

- a. had built b. built c. had been built d. was building

63. His first short story.....in 1990.

- a. came out b. was come out
c. had been come out d. was coming out

64. I hate.....at.

- a. laughing b. being laughed
c. to laugh d. laugh

65. Ito help this little strange man.

- a. am asking b. asked c. was asked d. was asking

66. The astronaut changed the part easily because he..... working in zero-gravity.

- a. used to b. was used to c. is used to d. was using

2) Read the following passage , then answer the questions:

Do you think it is the brain or the heart? What hurts or feels the best when you see the person you love?

The brain plays a major part in your life. The brain helps us to sometimes **suppress** pain. People can be shot and not feel it because of their adrenaline. When you see the person you love the reason your heart starts to beat fast is because of adrenaline. The brain sends signals to the adrenal gland, which then secretes hormones and then they go to the heart which causes the heart to beat faster.

Your brain puts together all of the thoughts as to why you love or like a person and your heart eventually feels it. Your brain tells you you like or love someone and your heart feels the emotion. I do not know exactly where the heart came into play and who started the words heart break because we all know your heart doesn't really break. I think your heart beats faster when you are nervous. I do think though the brain is where this all begins. We all know if you are brain dead you are technically dead because your brain tells your body what to produce and what to feel.

1. The word **suppress** means.....

- a. increase b. eats c. relieve d. release

2.stop people from feeling pain if they are shot.

- a. Formaline b. Adrenaline c. Nitrogen d. Oxygen

3. Everything happens in our bodies starts in the.....

- a. heart b. liver c. kidney d. brain

4. When we see the person we love,.....

- a. our hearts stop beating b. our hearts beat fast
c. our hearts send signals to our brain d. our hearts secrete hormones

5. Hearts.....break.

- a. always b. sometimes c. never d. usually

6. Adrenaline is a/an.....

- a. organ b. hormone c. drug d. gene

7. Why does the writer think that the brain is responsible for love not the heart?

8. How does the brain help us to bear pain?

9. What happens in our body when we see the one we love?

10. What happens when someone's brain dies?

4) Finish the following dialogue:

Layla is phoning her friend, Samia, to invite her to her birthday party.

Layla : Hello, Samia. This is Layla speaking. You know, Samia, my birthday is next Tuesday.

Samia : Really ? 1).....?

Layla : Twenty five. I'll be giving a birthday party. Are you free on that day ?

Samia : 2).....

Layla : I'm glad you can come.

Samia : 3).....?

Layla : Only some of the closest friends.

Samia : Do I know all of them ?

Layla : Yes, I think you know them all.

Samia : 4).....?

Layla : Approximately, it will start at seven o'clock.

Samia : What would you like for a birthday present ?

Layla : 5).....

Samia : You always like photography.

Layla : Photos reminds me of the good times.

Samia : 6).....?

Layla : The first photo will be with you.

5) Write a paragraph of (120) words about ONE (1) only of the following:

- Space exploration.
- The advantages and disadvantages of artificial intelligence.

Translation

6) a) Translate into Arabic :

1- People think that space exploration is a waste of time and money and we should use this money to solve problems on earth.

2- Everyone has the ability to be successful in life if he\she work hard.

b) Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English :

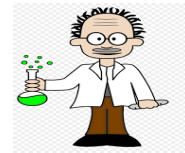
١- لقد قام احد المخرجين المشهورين بتحويل رواية "ملحمة الفضاء" الى فيلما سينمائيا عام ١٩٦٤ .

٢- لقد كان ارثر كلارك كاتب مشهورا ومستشارا علميا ايضا .

Unit 9

Science and scientists

LISTENING



Most people love their mobile phone, but some people are worried about the effect that mobile phone **signals** might have on our health. These signals are sent to and from our mobile phones and mobile **devices** all the time. Scientists think that the signals are too weak to do any damage to our health. However, mobile phones have not been around long enough for scientists to be certain of this.

For that reason, parents of children with mobile phones should get their children to **limit** the amount of time they spend using them. They should also get them to turn off their mobile phones when they go to sleep, or to put them in a different room. Although mobile phone signals are weak, the signals sent from mobile phone **masts** are much stronger. Some people who live near mobile phone masts in particular worry about what the **radio waves** might do to them. These waves are very powerful and can travel for many kilometres. They can pass through buildings, so they can easily pass through our bodies too. Many people who live close to masts have complained about feeling tired, getting headaches and even getting forms of **cancer**. But is there really a link between **illnesses** and radio waves?

It seems that there is no **proof** that radio waves make people ill. In 2014, scientists did an experiment in England. They had ten students move into a house with a mobile phone mast in the garden. They had the mobile phone mast turned on ten days after the students moved in. However, the students thought that the mast was on all the time and they told the scientists that they felt ill. The result of the experiment seems to show that the cause of illnesses might be worrying about the effects of phone masts, rather than the radio waves themselves. However, to be safe, scientists believe that we should have mobile phone masts **installed** in high or remote areas wherever possible. It's probably a good idea for people who live close to mobile phone masts to get their health checked **frequently**, too. Follow this advice and you will be able to get things done on your mobile phone without worrying about your health.

Reading

"Food from the air"

Everyone has seen plants growing, but have you ever thought where they get their food from? In 1652, a European scientist called Van Helmot asked this question. Before this time, it had always been thought that plants must get their food from soil. However, Van Helmot decided to **test** the **theory with** experiments.

First, some soil was dried, put into a pot and weighed. After a small tree had been weighed, it was planted in a **pot** and rain water was added. Then, he had the tree watered **regularly** rain water. After five years, the tree was **removed** from the pot and weighed again.

Van Helmot found that the tree had **gained** a huge amount of weight. When he got the soil weighed, however, it was almost exactly the same weight as it had been five years earlier. Van Helmot thought this was strange, but decided that the extra weight of the tree must have come from the water. He did not realise that the tree was being fed by another **invisible** food.

We now know that plants and trees make their own food. Their leaves are like factories that produce everything they need, so that plants can change the energy from the sun into chemical energy. During this process, oxygen and sugar are produced. The oxygen is **released** back into the air, and the sugar is used by the plant as food.

VOCABULARY

cancer (n.)	سرطان	view (n.)	منظر
cancerous (adj.)	سرطاني	fix (v.)	يصلح
cause (n.\v.)	سبب/ يسبب	reports (n.)	تقارير
illness (n.)	مرض	dentist (n.)	طبيب اسنان
ill (adj.)	مريض	tooth (n.)	سنة
install (v.)	يركب	clinic (n.)	عيادة
installation (n.)	تركيب/ تنصيب	manager (n.)	مدير
link (v.\ n.)	يربط	workman (n.)	عامل
linkage (n.)	علاقة/ ارتباط	decorate (v.)	يزين
mast (n.)	برج تقوية اشارة	garage (n.)	ورشة اصلاح
signal (n.\v.)	اشارة/ يرسل اشارة	PE (n.)	تربية بدنية
effect (n.)	تأثير	danger (n.)	خطر
effective (adj.)	مؤثر/ فعال	dangerous (adj.)	خطير
affect (v.)	يؤثر	tickets (n.)	تذاكر
certain (adj.)	اكيد/ محدد	stadium (n.)	إستاد
uncertain (adj.)	غير اكيد	painter (n.)	رسام
parents (n.)	والدين	print (v.)	يطبع
limit (n.\v.)	حد/ يحدد	gain (n.\v.)	مكسب/ يزداد-يكتسب
waves (n.)	امواج	invisible (adj.)	غير مرئي
powerful (adj.)	قوى	invisibility (n.)	عدم الرؤية
seem (v.)	يبدو	visible (adj.)	مرئي
proof (n.)	اثبات	visibility (n.)	رؤية
prove (v.)	يثبت	process (n.\v.)	عملية/ يعالج بيانات
garden (n.)	حديقة	remove (v.)	يزيل
check (v.)	يفحص	removal (n.)	ازالة
frequently (adv.)	احيانا	remover (n.)	مزيل
experiment (v.)	تجربة معملية	release (n.\v.)	اطلاق سراح/ يطلق
research (n.\v.)	بحث/ يبحث	soil (n.)	تربة
disease (n.)	مرض	test (n.\v.)	اختبار/ يختبر
normal (adj.)	عادي	theory (n.)	نظرية
mind (n.\v.)	عقل/ يمانع	theoretical (adj.)	نظري
connection (n.)	توصيل	theoretically (adv.)	نظريا
connect (v.)	يوصل	theorist (n.)	عالم نظري
pole (n.)	عمود حديد	pot (n.)	اناء/ اصيص
diabetes (n.)	مرض السكر	regular (adj.)	منتظم
diabetic (adj.)	مريض بالسكري	regularly (adv.)	بانتظام
washing machine (n.)	غسالة	extra (adj.)	زيادة
technician (n.)	فني	leaves (n.)	اوراق
classroom (n.)	فصل	chemical (adj.)	كيميائي
program (n.)	برنامج	energy (n.)	طاقة
stick (n.)	عصا	confident (adj.)	واثق
tower (n.)	برج	confidence (n.)	ثقة
flag (n.)	علم	tolerant (adj.)	متسامح

حروف جر Prepositions

late for	متأخر عن	on the roof of	على سقف
run around	يجرى حول	on a boat	فى القارب
test....with	يختبر....بـ	at the end of	فى نهاية
remove... from	يزيل من	look after	يعتنى بـ
come from	ياتى من	move in	يعزل
get....from	يحصل على.....من	move into	ينتقل الى
similar to	مشابه لـ	change....from...into	يغير...من...الى...
fall off	يقع/ يسقط	worry about	قلق بخصوص
benefit from	يستفيد من	put....in	يضع.....فى
effect on	تأثير على	in particular	على وجه الخصوص
turn on	يدير/ يشغل	form of	شكل من
turn off	يغلق/ يطفىء	spend....on	يقضى/ ينفق على
pass through	يمر عبر	sent to	يرسل الى
close to	قريب من	the result of	نتيجة.....
complain about	يشكو من	the cause of	سبب.....

تعبيرات Expressions

mobile devices	أجهزة موبايل	make people ill	يجعل الناس تمرض
do damage	يسبب تلفا	make discoveries	يقوم بعمل اكتشافات
do an experiment	يقوم بعمل تجربة	chemical energy	طاقة كيميائية
mobile phones masts	أبراج محمول	gain weight	يزداد/ يكتسب وزنا
wherever possible	اينما امكن	solve serious problems	يحل مشاكل خطيرة
follow advice	يتبع النصائح	teenage years	سنين المراهقة
radio waves	موجات لاسلكية	rain water	ماء مطر
human activity	نشاط ادمى	eat with his mouth open	ياكل وفمه مفتوح
global warming	احتباس حرارى	go to sleep	يذهب للنوم
cut hair	يخلق شعرة	for that reason	لهذا السبب
check a car	يفحص سيارة	get headache	يصاب بصداغ
look ill	يطلب يبدو مريضا		



Asking for facts:

- Is that correct?
- Could you tell us something about.....?
- What (did you choose her) for?
- Is that true that.....?
- Do we know if.....?

Giving facts:

- It's possible that.....
- It's a well-known fact that.....
- We can be confident that.....
- We can't be sure of this, but.....
- What's certain is that.....

Definitions تعريفات

- 1 - cancer** مرض السرطان (cancerous سرطان - tumor ورم)
- a serious disease in which cells in your body grow in a way that is not normal.
- 2 - cause** سبب
- the person or thing that makes something happen.
- 3 - illness** مرض (ill مريض - become ill يمرض)
- a disease of the body or mind.
- 4 - install** يركب / ينصب (installation تركيب - installment تقسيط)
- put a piece of equipment somewhere so that it is ready to use.
- 5 - link** ارتباط (link between بين - link with ارتباط مع - linkage ارتباط بين شيئين)
- a connection between two or more events, people or ideas
- 6 - mast** برج تقوية
- a tall metal tower with an aerial that sends and receives radio or television signals.
- 7 - signal** إشارة / يوصل إشارة
- light or sound waves that carry information to a radio, television, etc.
- 8 - gain** يكتسب / يزداد (gain مكسب)
- to increase in something.
- 9 - invisible** غير مرئى (invisibility عدم رؤية - visible مرئى - visibility رؤية)
- impossible to see.
- 10 - process** عملية (process يعالج بيانات - processed معالج - محفوظ/ معالج)
- series of events or changes that happen naturally.
- 11 - remove** يزيل (remoal ازالة - remover مزيل)
- to take something away.
- 12 - release** يطلق / يترك (release تسريح)
- let go; stop holding something.



► the prefix in-, im- and un- (البادئات (تلحق ببداية الكلمة)

in-, im-, un- - البادئات الاتية تلحق باول الكلمة لتعطى معنى العكس وهى

In-		Im-		Un-	
visible	invisible	possible	impossible	important	unimportant
correct	incorrect	polite	impolite	infected	uninfected
tolerant	intolerant	probable	improbable	injured	uninjured
formal	informal	patient	impatient	intelligent	unintelligent
accurate	inaccurate	balance	imbalance	tidy	untidy
advisable	inadvisable	moral	immoral	certain	uncertain
curable	incurable	pure	impure	fair	unfair
active	inactive	proper	improper	selfish	unselfish

- ▶ **signal** إشارة (ضوئية/صوتية)
 ▶ **sign** لافتة / إشارة (مكتوبة أو مرسومة) / علامة
Ex: The plane sent a signal to the airport.
Ex: You should follow the road signs.
Ex: Tiredness can be a sign of illness.

- ▶ **installation** تركيب / توصيل / تنصيب
 ▶ **installement** تقسيط / ملحق جريدة
Ex: The installation of this program will take a few minutes.
Ex: We're paying for the car in monthly installements.

- ▶ **win - won - won** يفوز / يربح | يكسب
 ▶ **gain - gained - gained** يكتسب / يزداد وزن
 ▶ **earn - earned - earned** يكسب قوته / معيشته
Ex: Al- Zamalik won the cup by beating Al- Ahli 4-2.
Ex: Marwa has gained too much weight recently.
Ex: He earns his living by selling fish.

- ▶ **like** مثل / يجب
 ▶ **as** كـ / لأن / بينما / على الرغم من
Ex: Like most people, Van Helmot thought that plants must get their food from soil.
Ex: The sugar is used by the plants as food.

- ▶ **reason (for)** سبب (الشيء أو الشخص الذى جعل الشيء يحدث)
 ▶ **cause (of)** سبب (تفسير لحدوث الشيء)
Ex: The teacher wanted to know the reason why I was late.
Ex: They didn't know the cause of the fire.

- ▶ **move in** يعزل / ينتقل (بدون مفعول)
 ▶ **move into** ينتقل الي (تتبع بمفعول)
Ex: I no longer see Ayman. I think he moved in.
Ex: My uncle has moved into a new flat recently.

- ▶ **illness** مرض (غير معروف الاسباب ويمكن علاجه)
 ▶ **disease** مرض (عضوى وله سبب ولا يمكن علاجه)
Ex: He died after a long illness.
Ex: He suffers from a rare blood disease.

- ▶ **link (n.) (v.)** علاقة أو ارتباط (بين اثنين أو أكثر سواء اشخاص أو افكار أو احداث) - يربط
 ▶ **linkage (n.)** علاقة أو ارتباط (بين شيئين فقط)
Ex: Social customs provide a vital link between generations.
Ex: This chapter explores the linkage between economic development and the environment.

- ▶ **process (n.)** عملية
 ▶ **process (v.)** يحفظ طعام / يعالج بيانات / يمشى ببطء
Ex: Coming off the drug was a long and painful process for him.
Ex: Most of the food we eat today is processed in some way.
Ex: Wait until the computer processes your data.

Grammar

- Causative السببية

- السببية تعنى ان شخص ما او شيء ما سبب شيئا ليحدث ومن افعال السببية فعلى **have, get** وغالبا الفعل **have** اكثر رسمية من الفعل **get** وفى المبنى للمعلوم تكون صيغتها كالاتى:

☛ **Subject + have + person + Inf.**

☛ **Subject + get + person + to + Inf.**

Ex: The doctor will have the nurse call the patients.

Ex: I had the electrician look at my broken light.

Ex: Try to get Ali to help you.

Ex: I got the cleaner to clean my room.

- وفى المبنى للمجهول تكون صيغتها كالاتى ومعناها ان شخصا اخر غير المتحدث هو من قام بالحدث:

☛ **Subject + have + object + P.P.**

☛ **Subject + get + object + P.P.**

Ex: Mai had her phone stolen last night.

Ex: I got my shirt ironed.

- واليك الان اشكال فعلى **have, get** فى الاثبات والنفى فى بعض الازمنة:

1) Present simple tense : زمن المضارع البسيط

Active معلوم □	Passive مجهول □
S. + have\has + person + Inf.	S. + have\has + Obj + P.P.
S. + get\gets + person + to + Inf.	S. + get\gets + Obj. + P.P.
S. + don't\doesn't have + person + Inf.	S. + don't\doesn't have + Obj + P.P.
S. + don't \doesn't get + person + to + Inf.	S. + don't\doesn't get + Obj. + P.P.
Do\ Does + S. + have + person + Inf.?	Do\ Does + S. + have + obj. + P.P.?
Do\Does + S. + get + person + to + Inf.?	Do\Does + S. + get + Obj. + P.P.?

Ex: My mother always gets me to clean my room.

Ex: I usually have my brother go out with me.

Ex: I don't have anyone do my homework.

Ex: Do you have anyone clean your flat?

Ex: Do you have your shirts cleaned?

Ex: Does Heba get her food cooked?

2) Past simple tense : زمن الماضى البسيط

Active معلوم □	Passive مجهول □
S. + had + person + Inf.	S. + had + Obj + P.P.
S. + got + person + to + Inf.	S. + got + Obj. + P.P.
S. + didn't have + person + Inf.	S. + didn't have + Obj + P.P.
S. + didn't get + person + to + Inf.	S. + didn't get + Obj. + P.P.
Did + S. + have + person + Inf.?	Did + S. + have + obj. + P.P.?
Did + S. + get + person + to + Inf.?	Did + S. + get + Obj. + P.P.?

Ex: Mai had her blouse ironed yesterday.

Ex: Last week, I got my car washed.

Ex: I didn't have my mobile repaired yesterday.

Ex: Did you have your flat cleaned?

3) Present continuous tense : زمن المضارع المستمر

Active معلوم □	Passive مجهول □
S. + am, is, are having + person + Inf.	S. + am, is, are having + Obj + P.P.
S. + am, is, are getting + person + to + Inf.	S. + am, is, are getting + Obj. + P.P.

Ex: I am having a maid clean my flat at the moment.

Ex: I am having my flat cleaned at the moment.

3) Future simple tense : زمن المستقبل البسيط

Active معلوم □	Passive مجهول □
S. + will have + person + Inf.	S. + will have + Obj + P.P.
S. + will get + person + to + Inf.	S. + will get + Obj. + P.P.

Ex: Tomorrow I will have my mobile repaired.

Ex: I will get a technician to install a security camera in my shop.

- وهكذا فى باقى الازمنة يصرف فعلى السببية have, get فى الازمنة المختلفة كافعال اساسية:

Extra Notes:

- لاحظ عزيزى الطالب ان هناك افعال اخرى تستخدم فى قاعدة السببية ومنها:

make, let, help, persuade, force, allow, permit

ولكن:

- Subject + make\makes\made + person + Inf.
- Subject + let \let\let + person + Inf.
- Subject + help\helped\helped + person + Inf.\to + Inf.
- Subject + allow\persuade\permit\force + person + to + Inf.

Ex: The teacher made us do the homework again.

Ex: I helped my mum prepare\to prepare the lunch.

Ex: I persuaded Hala to go with me.

Ex: They forced him to sign the cheque.

Homework

1) Choose the correct answer

1. Most scientists agree that human activity is the.....of global warming.
a. reason b. cause c. because d. cease
2. Our English teacher wants us to form a.....between our school and a school in London.
a. pink b. blink c. link d. click
3. It is sometimes difficult to get a telephone.....in remote parts of the country.
a. signal b. sign c. signature d. mark
4. Diabetes is an.....which affects a lot of people.
a. illness b. ill c. illegal d. irregular
5. Hala's grandmother is very ill. She has.....
a. lancer b. dancer c. cancer d. carroot
6. They have put a new telephone.....on the roof of the building.
a. mist b. moist c. mast d. miss
7. my mother bought a new washing machine and my uncle is going to.....it this evening.
a. install b. stall c. instill d. stop
8. Bad traffic is.....a lot of people to be late for work today.
a. ceasing b. causing c. making d. letting
9. Fareeda looks..... I think she should see a doctor.
a. ill b. illness c. disease d. pain
10. Look at the lights on that boat, they are.....to us?
a. signing b. singing c. swimming d. signalleing
11. The teacher asked the technician to.....all the computers in the classroom.
a. pink b. blink c. link d. click
12. We bought a new program for our computer and the.....has been successful.
a. installement b. installation c. install d. stall
13. A.....is used to send radio waves.
a. mast b. pole c. tower d. stick
14. A.....is used to help someone to walk.
a. mast b. pole c. tower d. stick
15. You can walk up a.....to get a good view.
a. mast b. pole c. tower d. stick
16. We put the flag on a.....
a. mast b. pole c. tower d. stick
17. The car should not be parked there so the people will have it.....
a. removed b. released c. gained d. processed
18. You can see more air pollution but a lot of it is.....
a. visible b. invisible c. divisible d. incurable
19. Children grow fast and.....a lot of weight in their teenage years.
a. award b. earn c. win d. gain
20. It is not usually possible to.....zoo animals into the wild, because they would not know how to survive.
a. please b. release c. increase d. breeze
21. It was a long and difficult.....to build the bridge, but cars can use it now.
a. precise b. procession c. process d. access
22. I wrote a letter to my friend so the language was very.....
a. formal b. informal c. invisible d. impatient

37. Tarek fell off his bike this morning, but fortunately he was.....
 a. injured b. hurt c. uninjured d. hit
38. This timetable is very old and the information is.....
 a. inaccurate b. incurable c. impure d. invisible
39. It is.....to eat with your mouth open.
 a. polite b. pure c. impure d. impolite
40. The primary school children were very noisy and the teacher started to be.....
 a. impatient b. important c. impure d. polite
41. A tour guide cannot be.....because he or she meets so many different people from many different countries.
 a. polite b. tolerant c. intolerant d. invisible
42. Scientists do not think that all animals are..... Some of them are very clever.
 a. intelligent b. unintelligent c. untidy d. until
43. We get the signal for our mobile phones from that tall.....on the hill.
 a. match b. mast c. maze d. post
44. The teacher.....us copy the notes from the blackboard.
 a. got b. caused c. had d. allowed
45. The light from the sun that damages your skin is..... You can't see it.
 a. interrupted b. informed c. irrational d. invisible
46. The police do not know the.....of the accident in the street yesterday.
 a. challenge b. reason c. cause d. benefit
47. My mother.....me to help her do the shopping this morning.
 a. got b. made c. had d. let
48. Cancer is a terrible..... that people of any age can get it.
 a. toxic b. ill c. sick d. illness
49. Wait there and I'll.....Yasser to help you with those bags.
 a. have b. get c. let d. make
50. It is amazing how some animals can.....in the desert.
 a. survive b. survey c. alive d. die
51. Scientists think that there is a.....between pollution and climate change.
 a. join b. connection c. link d. secret
52. It is not always easy to get a mobile phone.....in the desert.
 a. sign b. noise c. signal d. side
53.is a serious disease in which cells in your body grow in a way that is not normal.
 a. Cancer b. Diabetes c. Amnesia d. Flu
54. The.....is the person or thing that makes something happen.
 a. reason b. cause c. cease d. because
55. A.....is a number of waves that send information to radio, television etc.
 a. sign b. signature c. signal d. sin
56. A.....is a tall pole often used for sending waves of radio.
 a. maze b. mist c. mast d. moist
57. A.....is a connection between two or more people, situations etc.
 a. pole b. rope c. tie d. link
58. To.....means to put a piece of equipment somewhere so that it is ready to use.
 a. cause b. remove c. install d. release

59.is a disease of your body or mind.
a. Illness b. Diet c. Signal d. Removal
60. The police do not think there is any.....between this crime and last week's murder.
a. link b. shrink c. think d. pink
61. All shops and markets have to.....security cameras.
a. award b. absorb c. install d. stall
62. We're paying for the car in monthly.....
a. install b. installations c. installements d. sticks
63. Three hostages were.....this morning.
a. removed b. released c. realised d. analysed
64. I don't like eating.....food.
a. released b. depressed c. processed d. analysed
65. Germs and viruses are..... We can't see them with the naked eye.
a. visible b. invisible c. divisible d. indivisible
66. No.....without pain.
a. win b. earn c. gain d. jeans
67. The small child talked rudely. He was.....
a. polite b. impolite c. impatient d. informal
68. Manal had an accident, but is OK. She was.....
a. uninjured b. untrue c. unnatural d. informal
69. I think more scientific discoveries will be.....in the future.
a. done b. made c. got d. had
70. The scientist decided to.....his theory with experiments.
a. taste b. tease c. test d. toast
71. When you write an email to a friend, it is.....
a. foam b. formula c. formal d. informal
72. We waited an hour for the bus and began to feel.....
a. patient b. ill c. impatient d. patent
73. People, animals and plants need clean air to.....
a. beneath b. breathe c. breath d. squeeze
74. Mobile phones.....can damage your health.
a. signs b. sins c. signals d. sons
75. The.....of a tree are like factories that produce everything they need.
a. leaves b. branches c. roots d. barks
76. I like planting flowers in.....and put them in my balcony.
a. pets b. pots c. pigs d. pens
77. He ignored the "No Smoking".....
a. sign b. signature c. signal d. sin
78. Now people spend too much time.....mobile phones.
a. in b. at c. on d. into
79. During the storm, the captain of the ship asked his sailors to lower down the.....
a. most b. mast c. mist d. stick
80. Watch this film to understand the.....of photothynthesis, how a plant make food.
a. gain b. process c. release d. boss
81. Many people who live close to mobile phones masts complained.....feeling tired.
a. on b. of c. about d. to

82. It is a complex.....to generate electricity from nuclear energy.
a. process b. cure c. amount d. theory
83. There is a.....tumor on her lung that needs to be removed immediately.
a. theory b. cancer c. diabetes d. flu
84. I no longer see her. She seems that she has moved.....
a. in b. into c. at d. of
85. My friend Ali has moved.....a new house recently.
a. in b. into c. at d. of
86. The PE teacher had us.....around the playground four times.
a. to run b. to be run c. run d. running
87. If you don't know how to use the computer, get your brother.....you.
a. to help b. be helped c. helping d. help
88. We're eating in a restaurant tonight because my parents are having the kitchen.....
a. paint b. to paint c. be painted d. painted
89. Walid has his eyes.....last week, and now he needs to wear glasses.
a. testing b. be tested c. tested d. test
90. My mother usually gets me.....my bedroom at the weekend.
a. tidy b. tidied c. to tidy d. tidying
91. Hamdi's homework was not very good so the teacher had him.....it again.
a. did b. doing c. to do d. do
92. The manager got a technician.....a new computer program.
a. installed b. insatlling c. to install d. install
93. Ali is going to the stadium this afternoon. Let's get him.....some tickets for next week's match.
a. to buy b. buy c. bought d. buying
94. Leila usually.....twice a year.
a. has her teeth checked b. checks her teeth
c. has checked her teeth d. get her teeth checked
95. I usually.....once a month.
a. make my hair b. have cut my hair
c. get my hair d. have my hair cut
96. You can.....on a T-shirt in that shop.
a. printing your name b. have put your name
c. get your name printed d. get printed your name
97. Did you have your meal.....?
a. prepare b. to prepare c. preparing d. prepared
98. Ali is getting his car.....
a. repair b. to repair c. repairing d. repaired
99. Dina.....the flat cleaned every week.
a. does b. allows c. makes d. has
100. Please.....Yasser to help you.
a. let b. get c. have d. make
101. The teacher had us.....some extra work today.
a. be done b. did c. do d. to do
102. IAli to go to the sports club with me, although he didn't want to go.
a. got b. had c. let d. made
103. Before the meeting, the manager always.....the reports typed.
a. gets b. makes c. lets d. allows

2) Read the following passage , then answer the questions:

At an early stage of life, a child can show the career he is going to take up in the future. An observant father can easily **foretell** which of his sons is going to be a surgeon and which is going to be an engineer or even a craftsman. The way a child practices things shows his skills and capacities. He may be taking the technical attitude if he breaks his toys to pieces in the hope of reconstructing them again. On the contrary, if he breaks his toys just for the sake of bringing everything to ruin and destruction, we may say that he is going to be successful only in military operations.

Parents have an important role to play in shaping their children's characters and modifying their manners. Through a gentle touch, a loving smile, a toy or even a word of praise for good behavior, children can be encouraged to do what is proper and acceptable. On the other hand, just a word of reproach, an angry look or a slight sort of punishment on the spot for misbehavior can teach our kids how to distinguish between what is right and what is wrong.

1. The word misbehaviour means:

- a. deeds b. misdeed c. good manners d. action

2. Parents should be.....

- a. strict b. lenient c. selfish d. A and B

3. Parents should.....their child for good behavior.

- a. punish b. reward c. insult d. damage

4. The word foretell means.....

- a. predict b. give c. remove d. intend

5. Military operations require.....people.

- a. weak b. kind c. gentle d. strong

6. A child can show the career he is going to take up in the future when he is.....

- a. old b. young c. a man d. a teenager

7. How does a child show the career he is going to take up in the future?

8. For what two purposes do children break toys?

9. The writer suggests two approaches for refining manners. What are they?

10. Find words in the passage which means:

- a- flatter b. differentiate

4) Finish the following dialogue:

Tamer is telling Waleed about his new job in Canada.

Tamer : I've been offered a good job.

Waleed : Good! I).....

Tamer : It's in a big new hospital. Working conditions are much better than here. So is the salary.

Waleed : Marvellous . But 2)

Tamer : Through the Canadian Embassy Cairo.

Waleed : Do they still have vacancies

Tamer : 3)..... You need to check

Waleed : 4).....

Tamer : 5).....?

Waleed : As you know living conditions are very hard here in Egypt.

Tamer : I wish you good luck.

Waleed : 6).....

5) Write a paragraph of 120 words about ONE (1) only of the following:

- The hazards of living near mobile phones masts.
- Scientific discoveries in the future.

Translation

6) a) Translate into Arabic :

1- Parents should get their children to limit the amount of time they spend using their mobile phones.

.....

2- Scientists always test their theories with experiments then they compare the results.

.....

b) Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English :

١- النوم بجوار هاتفك المحمول له اضرار صحية وخيمة .

.....

٢- تعد سميرة موسى من النساء المصريات العالمات فى مجال الذرة والطاقة النووية.

.....

REVISION C**LISTENING**

Journalist : I've heard that there is a lot of rubbish in space. Is that correct?

Scientist : Yes, it is. The first man in space was on Vostok 1, which launched from earth in 1961. Since that time, around 7,000 spaceships and satellites have been sent into space. It's a well-known fact that not all parts of a spaceship return to earth. A lot of parts stay in space and continue to orbit the Earth. Satellites also break or stop working. So all of these parts become rubbish.

Journalist : Is it possible that spaceships or astronauts could be hit by this space rubbish? That would be very dangerous, wouldn't it?

Scientist : Yes, it is possible. It is thought that there are about 18,000 large objects going around the earth. Most of this is space rubbish. But it is believed that there are thousands of smaller objects too. These travel very fast. A spaceship can be badly damaged or fail if it is hit by one of these objects.

Journalist : That is a huge amount of space rubbish! Can you tell us what would happen if an object hit the space station, for example?

Scientist : The astronauts are trained for this situation. If there is a problem, they will be taken back to earth. This almost happened in 2015. The astronauts were told that the space station might be hit by space rubbish in 90 minutes' time. They were ready to leave the space station, but fortunately, it was not hit.

Journalist : What can be done to help this situation in the future? Can the space rubbish be removed?

Scientist : Many ideas have been suggested. One idea is to push the rubbish far out into space, where it cannot damage anything. Another idea is to send a special spaceship into space that has a net. The space rubbish can then be caught using the net. The rubbish is then taken closer to the earth, where it will be burned.

Journalist : They are interesting ideas! Thank you very much.

READING**Fast Forward**

You are driving your **smart** car along the main road from Cairo to Aswan when something goes wrong with the engine. You do not know what the problem is, but you do not need to worry. The engine will be **examined** by the computer in your car, which will find the cause of the problem. The computer will then connect to the internet to find the **distance** to the nearest garage where your car can be repaired.

An email will then be sent to the garage to check that it has the parts that are needed for your car. If the garage has these, you will receive an email asking when you would like to take your car to the garage so the parts can be replaced. When you are not driving your car, you can reply on your mobile phone, which will email your message to the garage. In this way, your car's engine problems can be solved .

Imagine that someone wants to drive a car faster than the rules say that you can . In a smart car, this cannot happen . The speed of the car is controlled by a special **device**. It does not matter what you do, it will be impossible to drive faster than what the device tells the engine. Experts have found that the number of serious road accidents will be **reduced** by this device, and thousands of lives will be saved every year.

Is this just science fiction? No, the second device is **currently** being used. You can find information about it on the internet. The first device is **likely** to be used in a few years' time. In the future, it will be possible for technology to be used by everyone to solve engine problems and to keep everyone safe.

EXTRA READING

Medical Robots



What is the future of medicine? Many people believe that technology will be used a lot more to help people in the future. Technology has already been used in medicine for many years. A **pacemaker** is a small device that can help people with heart problems. People can have them put into their hearts to help them to beat **regularly**. Small devices can also be put into people's ears. They are connected to the brain and help deaf people to hear.

Many complex **operations** are also being done using technology. These devices have cameras that help the surgeon to see parts of the body that are very small, and they help to reduce the amount of the body that has to be cut in an operation. This helps the patient to recover more quickly.

People who have lost an arm or a leg can also use modern technology. They can have an electronic leg or arm, which can be moved like a normal limb. In the future, more electronic parts of the body might be made in this way. Soon it is believed that tiny **robots**, which are smaller than a millimetre across, will be injected inside people's bodies. Medicines can then be carried by the robots to the parts of the body that need them, so there will be fewer side effects.

Robots are also being used to clean hospital rooms. They are very efficient at killing germs and they help to reduce **infections**. Other robots are used in hospitals to mix medicines or to carry heavy patients who cannot walk. They may not look like human doctors or nurses, but one day we will probably be used to seeing robots in our hospitals.

VOCABULARY

correct (adj.)	صحيح	huge (adj.)	ضخم
rubbish (n.)	مكافاة/ يكافىء	sunlight (n.)	ضوء الشمس
spaceship (n.)	سفينة فضاء	capture (v.)	يأسر
satellites (n.)	اقمار صناعية	electricity (n.)	كهرباء
well-known (adj.)	معروف	quantity (n.)	كمية
fact (n.)	حقيقة	carbon dioxide (n.)	ثانى اكسيد الكربون
hit (v.)	يضرب	oxygen (n.)	اكسجين
astronauts (n.)	رواد فضاء	produce (v.)	ينتج
fortunately (adv.)	لحسن الحظ	reduce (v.)	يقلل
unfortunately (adv.)	لسوء الحظ	replace (v.)	يستبدل
remove (v.)	يزيل	vet (n.)	طبيب بيطرى
situation (n.)	موقف	Mars (n.)	كوكب المريخ
net (n.)	شبكة	rocket (n.)	صاروخ
power (n.)	قوة	technology (n.)	تكنولوجيا
light (n.)	ضوء	engine (n.)	محرك/ موتور

distance (n.)	مسافة	surgeon (n.)	جراح
garage (n.)	ورشة اصلاح	patient (n.)	مريض
rules (n.)	قواعد	operation (n.)	عملية
speed (n.)	سرعة	medicine (n.)	طب
control (v.)	يتحكم	medical (adj.)	طبي
device (n.)	جهاز	heart (n.)	قلب
matter (v.)	يهم	beat (n.)	نبض
impossible (adj.)	مستحيل	regular (adj.)	منتظم
experts (n.)	خبراء	regularly (adv.)	بانتظام
serious (adj.)	خطير / جاد	ears (n.)	اذان
science fiction (n.)	خيال علمي	brain (n.)	مخ
currently (adv.)	حاليا	deaf (n.)	اصم
current (adj.)	حالي / جاري	millimetre (n.)	مليمتر
likely (adv.)	محتمل	side effects (n.)	اثار جانبية
unusual (adj.)	غير معتاد	efficient (adj.)	كفاء
incredible (adj.)	لا يعقل	efficiently (adv.)	بكفاءة
robot (n.)	انسان الى	efficiency (n.)	كفاءة
complex (v.)	معقد	germs (n.)	جراثيم
complexion (n.)	تعقيد	infection (n.)	عدوى
human (adj.)	انسان	mix (v.)	يخلط
humane (adj.)	رحيم	mixture (n.)	خليط
inject (v.)	يحقن	heavy (adj.)	ثقيل
injection (n.)	حقن	look like (v.)	يشبه
limb (n.)	طرف	cancer (n.)	سرطان
pacemaker (n.)	جهاز تنظيم ضربات القلب	diabetes (n.)	مرض السكرى
tiny (adj.)	صغير جدا	development (n.)	تطوير / تنمية
huge (adj.)	ضخم	seeds (n.)	بذور
amount (n.)	كمية	model (n.)	نودج

Prepositions حروف جر

take in	يتمص	depend on	يعتمد على
send into	يرسل الى	decide to + Inf.	يقرر
return to	يعود الى	decide on + noun	يحدد
launch from	يطلق من	the cause of	سبب
go around	يدور حول	on mobile phone	على الموبايل
take back to	يرجع لـ	on the internet	على الانترنت
ready for	مستعد / جاهز لـ	change into	يغير الى
ready to	مستعد / جاهز ان	be possible for	ممكّن لـ
on a spaceship	على سفينة فضاء	go back	يعود الى
on the moon	على القمر	go on + V-ing	يستمر في
wrong with	خطا بـ	push....out into	يدفع.....خارجا الى
on the roof of	على سقف	connect to	يوصل بـ
inject inside	يحقن بداخل	efficient at	كفاء في

Expressions تعبيرات

stop working	يتوقف عن العمل	car makers	صانعو السيارات
since that time	منذ ذلك الوقت	serious accidents	حوادث خطيرة
orbit the earth	يدور حول الارض	put up signs	يضع اشارات
become rubbish	تتحول الى قمامة	medical robots	اليون طبيون
space rubbish	قمامة الفضاء	lose an arm	يفقد ذراع
It is believed	يُعتقد	electric leg	ساق كهربائية
well-known fact	حقيقة معروفة	solar panels	الواح الطاقة الشمسية
special glass	زجاج خاص	remove space rubbish	يزيل قمامة الفضاء
noise pollution	تلوث الضوضاء	feel comfortable	يشعر بالراحة
living room	غرفة معيشة	make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
smart car	سيارة ذكية	main road	طريق رئيسى
It doesn't matter	لا يهم		

Definitions تعريفات

- 1 - complex** معقد (complexion - complicated تعقيد) (consisting of many connected parts that are difficult to understand or explain)
- 2 - human** (رحيم/عطوف humane - بشر human beings - بشرية humanity) بشر/انسان (belonging to or relating to people.)
- 3 - inject** يحقن (injection حقن) (put medicine into your body using a special needle.)
- 4 - limb** طرف (an arm or leg.)
- 5 - pacemaker** جهاز تنظيم ضربات القلب (a small machine that is put inside someone's heart to help it beat regularly.)
- 6 - tiny** صغير جدا (very small)

Homework

1) Choose the correct answer

- 1. A.....is a small device that can help people with heart problems.**
a. peacemaker b. playmaker c. filmmaker d. pacemaker
- 2. My friend.....his arm in a car accident.**
a. missed b. lost c. gained d. left
- 3. One day we will probably be used.....robots in our hospitals.**
a. to see b. to seeing c. see d. seeing
- 4. Energy is produced when the light from the sun.....the earth.**
a. reach b. is reached c. was reached d. reached
- 5. Trees take.....carbone dioxide and produce oxygen.**
a. in b. on c. off d. at

6. Tarek is not here at the moment because he.....
 - a. cuts his hair
 - b. have his hair cut
 - c. is having his hair cut
 - d. has cut his hair.
7. I tried to find a.....to repair my car.
 - a. garbage
 - b. garage
 - c. zigzag
 - d. gargar
8.means very small.
 - a. Giant
 - b. Huge
 - c. Enormous
 - d. Tiny
9. An electronic leg can be moved like a normal.....
 - a. limb
 - b. lamp
 - c. lamb
 - d. lime
10. Cancer and diabetes are serious.....
 - a. ill
 - b. illness
 - c. illnesses
 - d. blesses
11. It's a well-known.....that not all parts of a spaceships return to earth.
 - a. fiction
 - b. fact
 - c. fict
 - d. focket
12. How is energy from the sun.....in Egypt?
 - a. using
 - b. be used
 - c. used
 - d. uses
13. My father has bought a.....car recently.
 - a. seminar
 - b. senior
 - c. smirt
 - d. smart
14. I tried to get him.....to my plan.
 - a. to agree
 - b. agree
 - c. agreeing
 - d. agreed
15. The farmer is having his horse.....by the vet.
 - a. check
 - b. be checked
 - c. checked
 - d. to check
16. Using the internet has its pros and.....
 - a. cans
 - b. cons
 - c. coins
 - d. tons
17. Mars, Saturn and earth are.....
 - a. plants
 - b. plans
 - c. planes
 - d. planets
18. We all want the number of road accidents.....
 - a. to reduce
 - b. reduced
 - c. to be reduced
 - d. to reducing
19. He treats her like a.....being, like a responsible person.
 - a. humane
 - b. human
 - c. humid
 - d. humanity
20. A.....is a machine that resembles a human and does mechanical, routine tasks on command.
 - a. rabbit
 - b. rebot
 - c. robot
 - d. boot
21. This accident.....in 2012.
 - a. was happened
 - b. is happened
 - c. happened
 - d. be happened
22. I love.....you honesty and politeness.
 - a. all
 - b. either
 - c. neither
 - d. both
23. Itthat Al Ahly will win the match.
 - a. believes
 - b. is believed
 - c. believed
 - d. believing
24. A famous surgeon is going to.....a serious operation on my uncle tomorrow.
 - a. make
 - b. do
 - c. have
 - d. get
25. The nurse asked me to roll up my sleeve to give me an.....
 - a. objection
 - b. elephant
 - c. interaction
 - d. injection
26. Our hearts.....regularly.
 - a. bite
 - b. beat
 - c. boot
 - d. bet

27. I'm having my hair.....now.

a. cut

b. cutting

c. being cut

d. is cut

28.was your money stolen?

a. Who

b. Whom

c. By whom

d. Which

29. They.....married in 2004.

a. had

b. got

c. did

d. let

30. This old house needs.....

a. to demolish

b. demolished

c. to be demolished

d. demolish

Translation

6) a) Translate into Arabic :

1- Modern technology has become part and parcel of our modern life.

.....

2- Ibn Al-Nafis was an Arab physician mostly famous for being the first to describe the pulmonary circulation of the blood.

.....

b) Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English :

١- تمتص الاشجار ثانى اكسيد الكربون وتطلق الاكسجين.

.....

٢- التكنولوجيا الحديثة نعمة اذا احسن استغلالها ونقمة اذا اسئء استخدامها.

.....

Practice Test 3a

A. Vocabulary and structure

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Hala's cousin to the station so he can take the train to Alexandria.

- a. is going to be taken b. will take c. is going to take d. will be taking

2- Today is the tenth..... of when we moved into our house.

- a. antiquity b. anniversary c. date d. year

3- Drive carefully here because the road

- a. was repaired b. is repairing c. is being repaired d. is repaired

4- The..... between Aswan and Luxor is about 200 kilometres.

- a. district b. long c. far d. distance

5- All the cakes in that shop by my aunt. She works there.

- a. made b. were making c. have been made d. have

6- Ships can see where to go at night and in bad weather because they have

- a. radar b. rafts c. poles d. positions

7- Those men..... our house yesterday morning.

- a. are decorating b. were being decorated
c. have been decorating d. were decorating

8- The secretarythe teacher's lesson to say that he had an important phone call.

- a. interrupted b. interpreted c. broke d. invited

9- The police said that the windows..... before the thieves went into the building.

- a. broke b. had broken
c. have being broken d. had been broken

10- The policeman to arrest the man because he was scaring people.

- a. threatened b. warned c. offered d. shouted

11- My mother..... me to help her do the shopping this morning.

- a. got b. made c. had d. let

12- Cancer is a terrible..... that people of any age can get.

- a. toxic b. ill c. sick d. illness

13- Leila usually..... twice a year.

- a. has her teeth checked b. checks her teeth
c. has checked her teeth d. get her teeth checked

14- Our house has been much less hot since my father air conditioning.

- a. put b. did c. installed d. made

15- Wait there and I'llYasser to help you with those bags.

- a. have b. get c. let d. make

16- makes things fall to the ground on earth.

- a. Gram b. Graph c. Gravity d. Space

17- Around six hours a day checking emails in many offices.

- a. spent b. are to spend c. are spending d. are spent

18- You must be careful when you take that medicine because it may have side

- a. affects b. effects c. affection d. effective

19- The new building will be usedyoung children who do not go to school yet.

- a. to b. with c. at d. by

20- I didn't like the soup without salt. I thought it was

- a. tasted b. tasty c. teased d. tasteless

21- That old hotel as a museum in the future.

- a. could use b. could be using
c. could be used d. could have used

22- It is amazing how some animals can..... in the desert.

- a. survive b. survey c. alive d. die

23- Our house..... decorated yet.

- a. hasn't been b. hasn't c. hadn't been d. won't have

24- Scientists think that there is a between pollution and climate change.

- a. join b. connected c. link d. secret

25- My fatherme tidy my room this morning.

- a. got b. had c. has d. caused

26- It is not always easy to get a mobile phone..... in the desert.

- a. sign b. noise c. signal d. side

27- I usually once a month.

- a. make my hair b. have cut my hair c. get my hair d. have my hair cut

28- You must work hard for the exam or you might

- a. fail b. feel c. fall d. fill

29- You can on a T-shirt in that shop.

- a. printing your name b. have put your name
c. get your name printed d. get printed your name

30- There is water on the floor. There must be a..... from the washing machine.

- a. luck b. lock c. leak d. lake

B- Reading Comprehension

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

How would you feel about travelling into space for six months to live on a planet that is 400 million kilometres from earth? And how would you feel if you had been told that you could never return? That is what is planned for people who are going on the Mars One mission in 2031 . Surprisingly, 200,000 applications have been received from people who want to join the mission, even though they know that they will never see earth again.

The people who want to go to Mars say that their plan is not very different from the first Europeans who went to America, or the thousands of people w ho have left their countries because of war or disease. They also knew that their new lives would be difficult, and that they would probably never see their countries again.

A hundred people who want to go to Mars have been chosen to start special training to see who is suitable. Scientists will get the people to live in a small living space for a long time, without seeing any friends or family. This will be similar to what they can expect on Mars. The launch will have a crew of just four people for the long journey into space. A special **settlement** will be built on Mars where food will be grown and the four people w ill live and work. It won't be an easy life: there will be very little water, they will have to grow their own food and the planet is known for its giant dust storms. Despite these problems, for some fearless pioneers, It is a challenge they cannot refuse.

1- How many people will be sent to Mars in 2031?

- a. 200,000 b. 100 c. 4 d. 400

2- Why did the people decide to travel to Mars?

- a. They want to see if they can survive there. b. They want to see the dust storms.
c. Scientists made them go there. d. They don't like earth.

3- What is the main idea of the text?

- a. One day, we will all live on Mars. b. Life on Mars will be very difficult.
c. The people who go to Mars will be famous. d. Life on Mars will never be possible.

4- What does the word **settlement** mean?

- a. a farm b. a place where a group of people live
c. a factory d. a rocket

5- What does the underlined It refer to?

- a. an offer to go to Mars b. a six-month journey into space
c. time spent with three other people d. an offer to send in an application

6- How far is Mars from earth?

- a. 400,000,000 kms b. 400,000 kms c. 4,000,000 kms d. 2,000,000 kms

7- How would you feel if someone told you that you could never return to earth?

8- Paraphrase this sentence: *It won't be an easy life: there will be very little water, they will have to grow their own food and the planet is known for its giant dust storms.*

9- Do you think that many people will live on Mars in the future? Why / Why not?

10- Find a word that means one of the first people to travel to an unknown place and begin living there.

The Novel

3- a Choose the correct answer:

1- What do Sapt and Rassendyll find when they return to the lodge in the forest?

- a. the body of the King
- b. the body of Josef
- c. the Duke
- d. an empty house

2- Why does Rassendyll have to continue pretending to be the King?

- a. Because the real King has been kidnapped.
- b. Because he enjoys it.
- c. Because Sapt wants him to become King.
- d. Because the Princess asks him.

3- Why can't the Duke kill the real King?

- a. He is already dead.
- b. Because then Rassendyll stays as the King.
- c. He doesn't know where he is.
- d. Because he loves his half brother.

4- Why does Duke Michael want Rassendyll to meet his special soldiers?

- a. He wants to be friendly.
- b. He wants to frighten Rassendyll.
- c. He wants them to work for Rassendyll.
- d. He wants Rassendyll to give them a job.

b- Answer TWO (2) of the following questions:

1- Do you agree that Rassendyll was lucky? Why? / Why not?

2- What do you think might have happened if Sapt and Fritz had been poisoned like the King?

3- Why do you think that Sapt and Rassendyll left the palace through a secret tunnel?

C- Writing

4- Finish the following dialogue:

Hazem and Imad are talking about revising

Hazem : I've heard that you always revise at night. 1).....?

Imad : Yes, that's right.

Hazem : 2).....?

Imad : One advantage is that it is much quieter at night.

Hazem : 3)..... . It is quieter then . 4).....?

Imad : A negative side is that I feel tired the next day.

Hazem : Yes, I'm sure you feel tired. It's harder to remember things at night, isn't it?

Imad : 5)..... . I remember things better then.

Hazem : Well, we all have different ways to revise!

Imad : 6).....

5- Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following:

- a. a description of a journey into space
- b. the advantages and disadvantages of artificial intelligence

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal blue or grey ruling lines. The paper has a thin red border around its edges. In the bottom right corner, there is a small graphic element resembling a folded corner or a piece of tape, colored light grey with a red outline. The paper appears to be a template for writing or drawing.

6- A Translate into Arabic:

- 1- Scientific research is very important, as it paves the way towards a better life.

- 2- Everyone should play a positive role in developing our country and achieving progress.

B- Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English:

- ١ - يستطيع رواد الفضاء ممارسة رياضة انعدام الوزن أثناء مهمتهم في الكواكب.

- ٢- لم يعد الفضاء غامضا بفضل المجهودات العظيمة للعلماء.

Practice Test 3a

A- Vocabulary and structure

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- We don't know much about the bottom of the oceans because some of them have not been.....
a. explained b. explored c. existed d. found
- 2- I can't wait for the holidays. My parents my sisters and me to our favourite beach!
a. are taken b. are taking c. will have been taken d. take
- 3- That is a hotel! It's the biggest building in the city.
a. giant b. mass c. hostile d. tiny
- 4- A new school..... near my home and it will be open next year.
a. will build b. was building c. is building d. is being built
- 5- The colour of this new car is..... . I don't like it at all.
a. ideal b. hopeless c. horrible d. ordinary
- 6- Hundreds of sailing boatsfrom the beach yesterday. They looked really lovely.
a. can be seen b. are seen c. could be seen d. were being seen
- 7- It takes many hours for the rocket to the Space Station.
a. get b. go c. reach d. travel
- 8- The teacher says that a new subject..... next week.
a. is taught b. will be taught c. will teach d. is going to teach
- 9- The rocket will be into space tomorrow morning.
a. launched b. taken c. kept d. died
- 10- Our rubbish..... every week.
a. are collected b. is collected c. was collecting d. is collecting
- 11- You should only phone 123 in a/an
a. emotion b. emergency c. ambulance d. situation
- 12- A lot more birds on the shore this year.
a. have been seen b. have seen c. had been seen d. saw
- 13- I can't talk to you now because I am to go out.
a. about b. off c. over d. away
- 14- We can't get on the plane yet because it
a. is clean ing b. is cleaned c. has been cleaned d. is being cleaned
- 15- We can't play this computer game because the..... don't work.
a. contents b. crew c. crops d. controls
- 16- When the police arrived at the bank, they realised that the money
a. had taken b. has been taken c. had been taken d. has taken
- 17- The teacher asked us to discuss the pros and..... of artificial intelligence.
a. benefits b. cons c. advantages d. content
- 18- That new mobile phone is expensive for me to buy.
a. so b. such c. too d. enough
- 19-is the study of energy, sound, light etc.
a. Physics b. Chemicals c. Geography d. Political Science
- 20- The bridge..... is near my house is more than two hundred years old.
a. that b. to which c. where d. what
- 21- The police do not know the of the accident in the street yesterday.
a. challenge b. reason c. cause d. benefit
- 22- Mariam the windows yesterday. They look nice and clean now!
a. got b. had c. cleaned d. got cleaned
- 23- The light from the sun that damages our skin is..... . You can't see it.
a. interrupted b. informed c. irrational d. invisible
- 24- Yesterday, we our roof repaired after the storm.
a. have had b. have c. have to have d. had to have

- 25- We get the signal for our mobile phones from that tall..... on the hill.
a. match b. mast c. maze d. post
- 26- I didn't understand the homework so I..... my friend to help me.
a. had b. got c. was having d. was had
- 27- I like to do.....work at the hospital. I don't get paid, but I enjoy helping the people there.
a. loyal b. freelance c. voluntary d. hopeful
- 28- The teacher..... us copy the notes from the blackboard.
a. got b. caused c. had d. allowed
- 29- Fawzi enjoys working at the hotel, but the.....is that it is a long way from his home.
a. downside b. upside c. benefit d. pros
- 30- of my parents are at home today because they are at work.
a. Neither b. Both c. Either d. All

B- Reading Comprehension

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Most people know that the first man on the moon was Neil Armstrong in 1969. However, since that time, the moon has been visited by eleven other men but they are not so famous. Who were these other space pioneers?

In 1969, four months after Neil Armstrong and his colleague Buzz Aldrin stayed on the surface of the moon for 21 hours, Alan Bean and Pete Conrad spent two days there. Bean is also an artist, and is the only person on earth who is able to paint space scenes that he had actually seen. In 1971, Alan Shepard and Edgar Mitchel went on a mission to study earthquakes on the moon (known as moon quakes). Shepard also enjoyed a game of golf there: because there is very little gravity, he hit the ball farther than any professional golf player on earth!

Seven months later, two more astronauts stayed for nearly three days on the moon. David Scott and James Irwin took along a special *vehicle* which meant they could travel around. They returned to earth with many moon rocks. In 1972, John Young and Charles Duke landed in the moon's mountains for the first time.

The moon was last visited at the end of 1972. Eugene Cernan and Harrison Schmitt explored the moon for three days, longer than any other astronaut. Schmitt was a geologist before he became an astronaut and he did a number of scientific experiments there. Before they returned to earth, Cernan wrote his daughter's name on the moon's surface. There is no weather on the moon, so he knew that there was nothing that would wear the letters away.

They are probably there today!

There are now plans to get astronauts to visit the moon again, although nobody knows when this might be.

1- Why are Alan Bean's paintings special?

- a. They were painted on the moon. b. They were painted in space.
c. He is the only artist who has been to space. d. You can only see them on the moon.

2- Why is it likely that you can still read the name of Eugene Cernan's daughter on the moon today?

- a. The letters are very big. b. The letters were written in rocks.
c. There is little that will remove the letters. d. His colleague was a geologist.

3- Why do you think that some of the astronauts played golf and wrote names on the surface of the moon?

- a. They were very important experiments. b. They wanted to have fun .
c. Scientists on earth got them to do these. d. They behaved badly.

4- Why do you think that astronauts were sent to the moon?

- a. To punish them. b. To do scientific experiments.
c. To test weightless sports. d. To test zero-gravity living.

5- What does the underlined word they refer to?

- a. the astronauts b. the spaceships
c. the moon's weather d. the letters on the surface

6- What do you think the word *vehicle* means?

- a. something used to carry people or things b. a type of spaceship
c. a rocket d. a type of satellite

7. Why do you think that no astronaut has visited the moon since 1972?

8. What was Alan Shepard and Edgar Mitchel's mission on the moon?

9. Do you think that the moon will be visited again in the future? Why / Why not?

10. How long did Neil Armstrong stay on the moon?

The Novel

3- a. Choose the correct answer.

1. What did Rassendyll do to surprise Sapt and the Marshal when they first arrived in Strelsau?

- a. He wanted to ride through the old town alone.
- b. He wanted to lead all the soldiers.
- c. He wanted to meet Duke Michael.
- d. He wanted to marry Princess Flavia.

2. What did Princess Flavia think of the King (Rassendyll) after the coronation?

- a. She thought that he was the same.
- b. She thought that he had changed.
- c. She knew that he wasn't the King.
- d. She didn't like him.

3. How do Sapt and Rassendyll leave the palace?

- a. through the city walls
- b. through a large gate
- c. through a secret passage
- d. through a cave

4. Who are the Six Men?

- a. They are the King's special soldiers.
- b. They are the Duke's best friends.
- c. They are the Duke's special soldiers.
- d. They are men who work for Colonel Sapt.

b. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions:

1. Why do you think that Rassendyll remembered very little of the coronation?

2. Why do you think that Rassendyll says that a pretend King's life is harder than a real King's?

3. Do you think it was a good idea for Rassendyll to give due care to the poor? Why?

C- Writing

4- Finish the following dialogue:

Azza and Radwa are talking about space travel.

Azza : I think that more money should be spent on exploring space.

Radwa : Why? 1).....?

Azza : One advantage is that we can learn more about the earth by learning about other planets.

Radwa : I think that one day, everyone will travel to space.

Azza : 2)..... . Not everyone will want to go to space.

Radwa : Are there any disadvantages to space travel?

Azza : 3).....

Radwa : Yes, it is very expensive. However, I've heard that without space travel, we would not have a lot of the technology that we use every day. 4).....

Azza : Yes, that's correct. A lot of the technology that we use was first used on spaceships.

Radwa : 5).....?

Azza : Yes . An example is sat-nav systems in people's cars. Satellites were first used to send information about spaceships.

Radwa : My father's car has sat-nav. I think it's very useful.

Azza : 6)..... . I think it's useful, too.

5- Write an email to a friend of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following:

Your name is Reda. Your friend's name is Essmat. His / Her address is Essmat@newmail.com.

- a. why people have always wanted to explore new places
- b. what you think of science fiction

This image shows a blank sheet of white paper designed for handwriting practice. It features a solid red vertical line along the left edge, creating a margin. The rest of the page is filled with evenly spaced, horizontal dotted lines for writing. In the bottom right corner, there is a small graphic element consisting of two overlapping triangles, one light blue and one light orange, meeting at a point.

6- A Translate into Arabic:

1. Mariam and Ahmed had their teeth checked by the dentist last Tuesday.
2. The government is trying to improve the educational system to keep up with world challenges.

B- Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English:

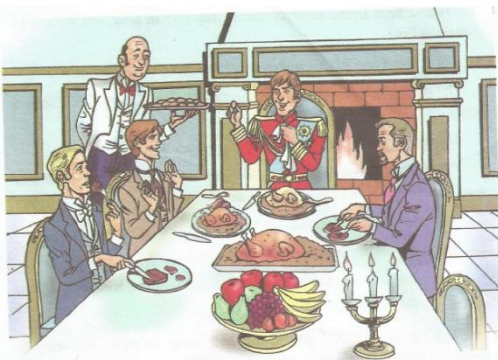
- ١- نحن نعلم الآن أن الزروع و الأشجار يستمدون غذاءهم من الهواء و التربة.
- ٢- التكنولوجيا الحديثة سلاح ذو حدين لذا يجب أن تستخدم بحرص.

PART

TWO

The Novel

The Prisoner of Zenda



Chapters

1, 2, 3, 4





dining room	غرفة الطعام	joyous occasions	مناسبات سعيدة
sunny morning	صباح مشمس	event	حدث
brother's wife	زوجة الاخ	the Alps	جبال الالب
egg spoon	ملقعة البيض	social problems	مشاكل إجتماعية
important position	مكانة مرموقة	politics	سياسة
count	كونت (لقب نبيل)	Plan to	يخطط لـ
countess	كوتيسة (لقب)	journey	رحلة
except	ما عدا	book a night	ي حجز ليلة
a member of....	عضو	call on	يزور
simply	ببساطة	journalist	صحفي
matter	أمر	recently	حديثا / مؤخرا
explained	شرح - فسر	lady	سيدة
lazy	كسول	guest	ضيف / نزيل
German school	مدرسة المانية	Duke	دوق (لقب)
swordsman	مبارز بالسيف	half-brother	أخ غير شقيق
riding a horse	ركوب الخيل	king	ملك
red hair	أشقر (ذو شعر أحمر)	favourite son	الابن المفضل / المدلل
different from	مختلف عن	coronation	حفل تتويج الملك
responsibilities	مسئوليات	get on the train	يركب القطار
opportunities	فرص	fashionably dressed	مرتدية على الموضة
ambassador	سفير	ticket office	مكتب حجز تذاكر
embassy	سفارة	servants	خدم
in six months' time	في غضون ٦ أشهر	behind	خلف
sister-in-law	زوجة الاخ	wondered	إندهش
impossible	مستحيل	dining car	غرفة الاكل بالقطار
sound	يبدو	both	كلا من
moreover	إضافة الى ذلك	border	حد
promise	وعد - يوعد	guards	حراس
an interest	إهتمام	check	يفحص
royal family	العائلة الملكية	stared at	حملق في
descendants	ذرية / نسل	in two days	في غضون يومين
straight nose	أنف مستقيم	excitement	إثارة
appearance	مظهر	capital	عاصمة
decision	قرار	hills	تلال
amazing celebrations	احتفالات مذهشة	famous castle	قلعة مشهورة
remained	ظل / بقى	well-defended	محصن / محمى
responsible for	مسئول عن	enormous trees	أشجار ضخمة
hotel owner	مالك الفندق	tough	صارم / قاسى
cares about	مهتم بـ	soldier	جندي
stranger	غريب	medium height	طول متوسط
abroad	خارج البلاد	gentleman	رجل محترم
look like	يشبه	guesses	تخمينات
hunting lodge	منزل للصيد	raised his hat	رفع قبعته
forest	غابة	the same height	نفس الطول
mean	يقصد / يعنى	extraordinary	غير عادى

deep voice	صوت عميق	stepped forward	خطى للأمام
took off his hat	خلع قبعة	Colonel	كولونيل (عقيد)
amazing	مدهش	shook hands	صافح / سلم على
conversation	محادثة	traveller	مسافر
walked up the stairs	صعد السلالم	officer	ضابط
wealthy trader	تاجر غنى	personalities	شخصيات
unable to go	غير قادر على الذهاب	identical twins	توأم متماثل
contact	يتصل	skills	مهارات
expect	يتوقع	sword	سيف
luggage	أمتعة	fighting man	رجل قتال / محارب
daughters	أبناء (بنات)	action	فعل / حدث
moat	خندق مملوء بالماء	alike	متشابهان
mansion	منزل فخم	easy life	حياة سهلة
drawbridge	جسر متحرك	in front of	أمام
shade	ظل	amazement	دهشة

THE SETTING AND INTRODUCTION:

The Prisoner of Zenda is an adventure romance novel by Antony Hope. It was first published in April 1894 and it achieved great success. This novel has many themes such as love, honour, chivalry, loyalty, honesty, sacrifice and responsibility.

The novel is about a young English gentleman, Rudolf Rassendyll, who travels to Ruritania (a fictional country in central of Eastern Europe) to witness \attend the coronation of King Rudolf the fifth. He finds himself in the centre of a conspiracy to prevent the rightful king to be crowned the King of Ruritania.

THE CHAPTER IN BRIEF

Rudolf Rassendyll had a discussion with Rose:

One sunny morning Rudolf was having breakfast at his brother's house when suddenly his brother's wife, Rose, came to the room and had a discussion with Rudolf. Rose told Rudolf that he should find himself a job instead of being unemployed idle and enjoying an easy life. Rudolf told Rose that he needn't work as he was very rich and had a good position in society as his brother was Lord Burlesdon and Rose herself was a countess. Rose was annoyed because her family were rich but less important than the Rassendylls.

Rudolf Rassendyll's skills:

Although Rudolf didn't work, he had not been lazy all his life. He had studied at a German school and German university. He spoke German as well as English. He also spoke French, Italian and Spanish. He was good with a gun and a strong swordsman. He was also very good at riding a horse.

Rudolf Rassendyll in comparison with his brother:

Rose told Rudolf that it was not his red hair that made him different from his brother (Robert \ Lord Burlesdon) but also his brother realized his position in society had responsibilities and that Rudolf only see opportunities in responsibilities. Rudolf admitted that to a man like him, opportunities were responsibilities.

✎ **A new job for Rudolf Rassendyll:**

Rose told Rudolf that Sir Jacob Borrodaile would be an ambassador in six months' time and he wanted Rudolf to work for him. As it was a good opportunity, Rudolf accepted the job. When Rudolf asked Rose where Sir Jacob would be working, she told him that it would be a good embassy. Rudolf told Rose that he would do that job for her even if it was a terrible embassy. Rudolf began to think about what he could do in that time. He decided that he would visit Ruritania.

✎ **Ruritania:**

Rudolf decided to go to Ruritania, a small country in the middle of Europe. Rudolf chose that country because his family had always had an interest in that country as Countess Amelia Rassendyll married a member of the Ruritanian royal family, the Elphbergs. His brother Lord Burlesdon had paintings of her descendants on his walls. As Rudolf was one of her descendants, he inherited the red hair and the straight nose from that royal family.

✎ **Rudolf decided to attend the King's coronation:**

Rudolf decided to go to Ruritania when one day, in The Times newspaper he read that King Rudolf the Fifth was going to be crowned the King of Ruritania the next three weeks. Rudolf began to prepare himself to attend the joyous occasion (the coronation).

Rudolf did not tell Rose and his brother about his intention \ plan because he did not like to tell people where he went on his travels. In order to make her not think he was lazy, Rudolf told Rose that he was going walking in the Alps and that he was going to write a book about social problems in the country. Lord Burlesdon told his brother Rudolf that writing books was the best way to get in politics as he himself had written many books. In fact Rudolf had no plans to really write a book. However, he wrote about his adventure in Ruritania.

✎ **The journey started (Paris):**

Rudolf set off his journey. Passing through Paris, he spent twenty- four hours there as his uncle William always said. Rudolf booked a night at The Continental Hotel. There he visited \ called on some old friends: George Featherly, who worked at the embassy and Bertram Bertrand a famous journalist. They all met in the evening in the hotel restaurant and discussed the latest exciting events in Paris.

Bertram told them that he met Antoinette de Mauban who was well known for her wealth and ambition. Antoinette was a guest of the Duke of Strelsau who was the half-brother to the king of Ruritania. The Duke was his father's favourite son and wished to be the king instead of being only a Duke. Bertram and George both agreed that Duke Michael was extremely clever.

George went with Rudolf to the station. Rudolf bought a ticket to the next stop, Dresden, and he didn't tell George that he was going to Ruritania because Rudolf didn't want the news to be in the newspaper if George told Bertram about that. At the station George met Antoinette who was also going to Dresden and then to Ruritania.

✎ **Reaching Ruritania:**

When Rudolf and Antoinette reached Dresden, both took the next train to Ruritania. At the Ruritanian border, the guards stopped the train to check the passengers' passports. On checking Rudolf's passport, the guards stared at him. In Ruritania, Rudolf read that the King's coronation would be in two days' time which was much earlier. The great ceremony would be in the capital city, Strelsau. Rudolf decided to go to Zenda, a small town 80 kilometres from the capital and ten kilometers from the border. There he could visit the famous castle. Rudolf got off the train at Zenda but Antoinette completed to Strelsau.

✎ Visiting Zenda:

In Zenda Rudolf was welcomed by an old lady and her two daughters at an inn. That lady told Rudolf that although she was not very interested in what happened in the capital, she loved the Duke of Strtelsau (Duke Michael) . Duke Micheal was the man who was responsible for the land around Zenda and its castle. The old woman wished the Duke was the new King and not his brother. The hotel owner told Rudolf that Duke Michael had always lived in Ruritania and he cared about people so people loved him in comparison with the king who had been abroad for most of his life and not many people even knew what he looked like. She also told him that the King was staying in a hunting lodge in the forest near Zenda. Rassendyll was interested to hear that and decided to walk in the forest the following day so that he might see the King. The old lady wished Duke Michael to be the king instead of the king who was only interested in hunting and good food. One of the woman's daughter (the older) told them that she knew from the Duke's servant (Johann) that the king of Ruritania had red hair. Rudolf was told that Duke Michael invited the king to Zenda and he was preparing for the coronation. But no one knew if they were good friends or not (The Duke and the king). Suddenly a man called Johann (the Duke's servant) appeared and he was surprised and amazed when he saw Rudolf. They were surprised of Rudolf's red hair as the king had. Johann asked Rudolf if he had ever seen the King and Rudolf told him that he had never met him but he hoped to see him on Wednesday at the coronation. The next morning, Johann invited Rudolf to stay at his sister's house in Strtelsau. Johann's sister was married to a wealthy trader. Johann phoned his sister to welcome the guest.

✎ A meeting in the forest:

Rudolf walked for sixteen kilometers through the forest to the next station along the line. He did not tell anyone where he was going. Rudolf Rassendyll sent his luggage on to the station and said goodbye to the old lady and her two daughters. After half an hour of walk, Rassendyll reached the castle which was very old but well built, with a moat all around it and there was a mansion behind it. That mansion was used by the Duke as his country home. The mansion was reached by a wide road, but the old castle could only be reached by a drawbridge between it and the mansion.

At the forest, in the shade of the tall trees, Rudolf was dreaming about living in the castle of Zenda when suddenly a voice woke him saying that Rudolf looked like the king. Two men carrying guns and were dressed for hunting were the people who awoke Rudolf. One of them was short but looked very tough with light blue eyes. He was called Colonel Sapt. The other was younger, thin and of medium height. He was called Fritz Von Tarlenheim. They were two officers for the King of Ruritania. The three men shook their hands and introduced themselves to each others.

Rudolf told the two officers that he was a traveler from England and was an officer in the Queen's army (the Queen of England) . Colonel Sapt. said that although Rudolf and the King of Ruritania looked like identical twins, they did not have identical personalities or skills. Sapt told Rudolf that he must be good with a sword but the King preferred eating to action. Rudolf told them that he and the King had something in common, the easy life.

✎ Face to face with the King:

The king came out from behind a tree and stood in front of the three men. When Rudolf saw the king he cried out and the king also was amazed. Except for a centimeter or two difference in Height, Rudolf and the king looked so alike as if they were identical twins.

Questions & Answers

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. How old is Rudolf Rassendyll?

- a) He is 28 years old.
- b) He is 29 years old.
- c) He is 30 years old.
- d) He is 27 years old.

2. Who is Rose?

- a) She is Rassendyll's sister.
- b) She is Rassendyll's wife.
- c) She is Rassendyll's sister-in-law.
- d) She is Rassendyll's friend.

3. Why is Rose angry with Rudolf Rassendyll?

- a) Because he does not eat well.
- b) Because he does not give her money.
- c) Because he does not play music.
- d) Because he does not work.

4. Why does not Rudolf Rassendyll work?

- a) Because he is very rich and has a good position in society.
- b) Because he does not find jobs.
- c) Because he is not able to work.
- d) Because he is too young to work.

5. Where did Rudolf Rassendyll study and learn?

- a) He studied and learned at English school and English University.
- b) He studied and learned at French school and French University.
- c) He studied and learned at German school and German University.
- d) He studied and learned at Italian school and Italian University.

6. What makes Rudolf Rassendyll different from his brother?

- a) Rudolf Rassendyll has red hair.
- b) Rudolf's brother has red hair.
- c) Rudolf has a good position in society.
- d) Rudolf's brother is lazier than him.

7. What does Rudolf Rassendyll think of opportunities?

- a) He thinks that opportunities are nothing to him.
- b) He thinks that opportunities are hard jobs.
- c) He thinks that opportunities are responsibilities.
- d) He thinks that opportunities are sayings.

8. Which job does Rose persuade Rudolf Rassendyll to do?

- a) work with an ambassador.
- b) write a book.
- c) teach children.
- d) work in a hotel.

9. What is the relation between the Rassendylls and the Elphbergs?

- a) Countess Amelia Rassendyll married the King of Ruritania in 1733.
- b) Countess Amelia Rassendyll married a member of the Elphbergs in 1733.
- c) One of the Rassendylls married a woman from the Elphbergs in 1733.
- d) Rassendyll's father married the Queen of Ruritania in 1733.

10. What helped Rassendyll's decision to visit Ruritania?

- a) When he read in The Times that the final match would be held there.
- b) When he read in The Times that the King of Ruritania was very ill.
- c) When he read in The Times that the coronation of the King would be in the next 3 weeks.
- d) When he read in The Times that the King's wedding would be in the next 3 weeks.

11. Why does not Rudolf Rassendyll tell Rose that he is going to visit Ruritania?

- a) Because he is a liar.
- b) Because he does not trust Rose.
- c) Because he does not want to take Rose with him.
- d) Because he does not like to tell people where he goes on his travels.

12. What did Rudolf Rassendyll tell Rose in order to make her not to think that he was lazy?

- a) He told her that he was going to train hard in the club.
- b) He told her that he was going walking in the Alps and was going to write a book.
- c) He told her that he was going to visit Ruritania.
- d) He told her that he was going to work with his brother.

13. What is William Rassendyll's advice to anyone who is passing through Paris?

- a) He said that the one should spend twenty-four hours there.
- b) He said that anyone who wants to visit Paris should take a lot of money with him.
- c) He said that no man could visit Paris.
- d) He said that Paris is full of thieves.

14. Who does Rassendyll call on in Paris?

- a) He visits some old teachers.
- b) He visits some old friends.
- c) He visits some ambassadors.
- d) He visits some famous doctors.

15. What does Bertram Bertrand do in Paris?

- a) He works for the embassy.
- b) He works as a teacher in a big school
- c) He works as a journalist.
- d) He works in a big restaurant.

16. What does George Featherly do in Paris?

- a) He works for the embassy.
- b) He works as a teacher in a big school
- c) He works as a journalist.
- d) He works in a big restaurant.

17. What is Antoinette de Mauban well known for?

- a) She is well known for her health and ambition.
- b) She is well known for her beauty and wealth.
- c) She is well known for her prestige and beauty.
- d) She is well known for her wealth and ambition.

18. What is Antoinette de Mauban doing in Paris?

- a) She is a guest of Rudolf Rassendyll.
- b) She is the guest of George Featherly.
- c) She is the guest of Bertram Bertrand
- d) She is the guest of Duke Micheal.

19. Who is Duke Michael?

- a) He's the half-brother to the King of Ruritania.
- b) He's the new King of Ruritania.
- c) He's Rudolf Rassendyll's best friend.
- d) He's Antoinette de Mauban's husband.

20. Why does not Rassendyll tell George that he is going to Ruritania?

- a) Because George would like to go with him.
- b) Because it is a military secret and he should keep it.
- c) Because he does not want Antionette de Mauban know that.
- d) Because he does not want the news to be in the newspaper.

21. Why did the guards at the Ruritanian border stare at Rassendyll on checking his passport?

- a) Because he was a wanted criminal
- b) Because he was a famous cinema star.
- c) Because he looked exactly like the King of Ruritania.
- d) Because his eyes were so beautiful.

22. Where is zenda?

- a) It is a small town 80 kilometres from the capital, and about 16 kilometres from the border.
- b) It is a small town 80 kilometres from the border, and about 10 kilometres from the capital.
- c) It is a small town 10 kilometres from the capital, and about 16 kilometres from the border.
- d) It is a small town 10 kilometres from the border, and about 80 kilometres from the capital.

23. Where does Rassendyll get off the train?

- a) He gets off at Dresden.
- b) He gets off at Strelsau
- c) He gets off at Zenda.
- d) He gets off at Cairo.

24. Who welcomed Rassendyll in Zenda?

- a) An old man and his two daughters
- b) An old man and his two sons.
- c) An old woman and her two sons.
- d) An old woman and her two daughters.

25. Why does the innkeeper want the Duke to be the new King?

- a) Because the Duke has lived most of his life abroad.
- b) Because the Duke is funny and silly.
- c) Because Duke Michael cares about them and their problems.
- d) Because the Duke promised to marry her.

26. How does the old woman and her daughter have different points of view about Duke Michael?

- a) The old woman wants the Duke's brother to be the new King unlike her daughter.
- b) The old woman wants the Duke to be their new king unlike her daughter.
- c) The old woman's daughter wants the Duke to be their new King unlike her mother.
- d) Both of them want the Duke to be their new King.

27. The innkeeper does not think that the Duke and his brother are not good friends because.....

- a) Both of them wants to be a King.
- b) Both of them wants to marry the same woman.
- c) Both of them wants to travel abroad.
- d) Both of them wants to be rich.

28. Who is Johann?

- a) He's Rudolf Rassendyll's friend.
- b) He's the new king's servant.
- c) He is the Duke's servant.
- d) He is the King's servant.

29. Why was Johann surprised when he saw Rassendyll at the inn for the first time?

- a) Because Rudolf Rassendyll looked stranger.
- b) Because Rudolf Rassendyll looked exactly like the new King.
- c) Because Johann has met Rudolf Rassendyll before.
- d) Because Johann thinks him a dangerous criminal.

30. When Johann saw Rudolf Rassendyll for the first time at the inn, he.....

- a) smiled and welcomed him.
- b) creid out and ran away.
- c) stepped back in surprise.
- d) stepped forward and shook hands with him.

31. What favour does Johann make to Rudolf Rassendyll?

- a) He lent him a sum of money.
- b) He invited him to stay at his sister's wife on the coronation day..
- c) He drove him to the coronation.
- d) He introduced him to the new King.

32. The castle of Zenda was very old but well built, with.....

- a) a playground in it.
- b) a palace inside it.
- c) a mansion in front of it.
- d) a moat all around it.

33. How could the old castle be reached?

- a) By a drawbridge between it and the mansion.
- b) By a wide road.
- c) By a drawbridge between it and the King's palace.
- d) By a flyover between it and the mansion.

34. Sapt and Fritz are.....

- a) two faithful followers to the Duke.
- b) Johann's best friends.
- c) Rassendyll's old friends.
- d) two faithful followers to the new King.

35. When Rassendyll met Sapt and Fritz in the forest of Zenda, of them were dressing for.....

- a) playing golf.
- b) hunting.
- c) the coronation.
- d) a fight.

36. What does Sapt look like?

- a) He is thin and of medium height.
- b) He is short and looks tough with light blue eyes.
- c) He is tall, funny with big belly.
- d) He is short and has red hair.

37. What does Fritz look like?

- a) He is thin and of medium height.
- b) He is short and looks tough with light blue eyes.
- c) He is tall, funny with big belly.
- d) He is short and has red hair.

38. Although Rassendyll and the new King looked like identical twins, they.....

- a) do not have the same look.
- b) do not have the same hair colour.
- c) do not have the same first name.
- d) do not have identical personalities or skills.

39. Both Rassendyll and the new King like.....

- a) to eat food and hunt animals.
- b) to have an easy life.
- c) to ride horses.
- d) to fight with a sword.

40. When Rassendyll saw the new King for the first time, he.....

- a) gave out a loud cry.
- b) gave out a loud laugh.
- c) hugged him hard.
- d) stabbed him in the shoulder.

41. Rassendyll was an officer in.....

- a) the King's army.
- b) the American army.
- c) Ruritanian army.
- d) the Queen's army.

42. The new King prefers.....

- a) action to eating.
- b) eating to action.
- c) action and eating.
- d) neither eating nor action.

43. The Elphbergs are distinguished with their.....

- a) white faces.
- b) long hair.
- c) red hair.
- d) big ears.

44. What was Johann's sister's husband's job?

- a) He was an officer.
- b) He was a wealthy trader.
- c) He was an ambassador.
- d) He was a poor trader.

45. Who was preparing for the coronation?

- a) Colonel Sapt.
- b) Fritz Von Tarlenheim.
- c) Duke Michael.
- d) The King.

46. Where did the King spend his time before the coronation?

- a) At the castle of Zenda.
- b) At the Duke's mansion.
- c) At a hunting lodge in the forest.
- d) At an inn.

47. How old was Antoinette de Mauban?

- a) She was about twenty years old.
- b) She was about thirty years old.
- c) She was about forty years old.
- d) She was about fifty years old.

48. Rassendyll told Rose that he was going to write a book about.....

- a) economical problems in London.
- b) his adventure in Paris.
- c) his adventure in Ruritania.
- d) social problems in the Alps.

49. Although Rassendyll did not write any books about social problems in the Alps, what did he really write about?

- a) He wrote about economical problems in London.
- b) He wrote about his adventure in Paris.
- c) He wrote about his adventure in Ruritania.
- d) He wrote about social problems in the Alps.

50. What was the job that Rose offered Rudolf Rassendyll?

- a) She offered him a job as an ambassador.
- b) She offered him a job as a minister.
- c) She offered him a job with an ambassador.
- d) She offered him a job with a minister.

51. When will Rassendyll have the job with sir Jacob Borrodile?

- a) In three weeks' time.
- b) In six years' time.
- c) In six months' time.
- d) In two weeks' time.

52. Why does Fritz von Tarlenheim say that he understands Rudolf Rassendyll well?

- a) They are both officers for a King or Queen.
- b) They both want to be King
- c) They both look like the King.
- d) They both want to meet the Duke.

53. Which of these is *not* a reason that Rudolf Rassendyll decides to visit Ruritania?

- a) He has six months before his job starts.
- b) His family have relatives there.
- c) Rudolf the fifth is to become King of Ruritania there shortly.
- d) He wants to be the ambassador to Ruritania.

B) Critical thinking questions:

1. Why doesn't Rudolf Rassendyll work?

✎ He belongs to a rich important family and doesn't need to work.

2. What kind of work does Rose suggest Rudolf should do?

✎ She wants him to take a job in an embassy, working for Sir Jacob Borrodaile.

3. Why has the Rassendyll's family been interested in the Elphberg family?

✎ Countess Amelia Rassendyll married a member of the Elphberg family many years ago. Many of her descendants look like the royal family of Ruritania (the Elphbergs). Rudolf looks like an Elphberg.

4. Where does Rassendyll decide to travel to? What does he tell his family about his plans?

✎ He travels to Ruritania to see the coronation of the new king. He doesn't tell his family that. He says he is going to go walking in the Alps and write a book about social problems in the country.

5. What does the owner of the inn think of Michael Duke of Strelsau?

✎ She thinks he should be the King because the real King only likes hunting and good food.

6. Why does Rassendyll decide to walk through the forest the next day?

✎ He wants to see the forest where the King is staying.

7. Who does Rassendyll meet in the forest? Why are they surprised to see him?

✎ He meets Colonel Sapt and Fritz Tarlenheim, and then the King. They are surprised because he looks almost exactly like the King.

8. What did Rose blame\ scold Rudolf for?

Why was Rose angry not satisfied with Rudolf?

✎ She blamed him for being 29 years old and not doing anything useful.

9. How did Rudolf Rassendyll account for justify his being idle (unemployed)?

✎ He said that rich families like the Rassendylls didn't need to do things. He said he had enough money to do anything he wanted. He had an important position in society.

10. Despite being jobless, Rudolf was boastful. Discuss.

Why was Rudolf proud of his position in society?

✎ He said that he enjoyed an important position in society as his brother was Lord Burlesdon and his sister-in-law was a countess.

11. According to Rudolf, How were Rose's family compared to the Rassendyll family?

Why was Rose annoyed when Rudolf was talking about his family?

✎ Although Rose's family were rich but less important than the Rassendyll family.

12. What was Rudolf good at (his skills)?

Mention some of Rudolf Rassendyll's skills?

✎ He was very good at speaking languages. He was also good with a gun and a strong swordsman. Besides, he was good at riding a horse.

13. According to Rose, how was Rudolf different from his brother?

✎ Rudolf had red hair and he was less responsible than his brother.

14. What did Rudolf Rassendyll say about opportunities?

✎ He said that opportunities were responsibilities.

15. Why had the Rassendyll family been interested in the Elphbergs family?

What relation was between the Rassendylls family to the Elphbergs family?

- ✎ Because Countess Amelia Rassendyll married a member of the Ruritania royal family, the Elphbergs. Rudolf was one of the Elphbergs descendants.

16. How did the marriage \ affinity of Amelia affect the appearance of Rudolf Rassendyll?

- ✎ Rudolf Rassendyll was the latest one to have the appearance of the Ruritania royal family. He had red hair and a straight nose.

17. Why do you think the guards at the Ruritania border stared at Rassendyll on checking his passport?

- ✎ Because he looked exactly like the king.

18. Why do you think the old woman thought that the Duke and the king weren't good friends?

- ✎ Because of their competition about the throne as Duke Michael wanted to be king, too.

19. Describe the famous castle in Zenda?

- ✎ It was very old but well built, with a moat all around it. Behind it was a large mansion where the Duke lived.

20. How could the old castle and the mansion be reached?

- ✎ The mansion could be reached by a wide road, but the old castle could only be reached by a drawbridge between it and the mansion.

21. To what extent did Rudolf look like the King?

- ✎ He looked like the king as if they were identical twins.

22. How was Rassendyll different from the King?

- ✎ - They didn't have the same personalities or skills.
- Rassendyll was a good swordsman whereas the King was not a fighter.
- They didn't have the same height (one or two centimeters).

23. What helped Rassendyll's decision to go to Ruritania?

- ✎ When he read in The Times newspaper that the King's coronation would be in 3 weeks' time.

24. Rose is a very persuasive \ influential character \ person. Illustrate.

- ✎ Rose has a way of asking people to do things which is impossible to refuse. She could persuade Rassendyll to accept the new job as an attaché with the sir Jacob Borrodaile.

25. Although they are brothers Rudolf Rassendyll and Robert Rassendyll have different personalities They are not alike. Discuss.

- ✎ Rudolf Rassendyll has red hair and straight nose while his brother Robert hasn't. Rudolf hasn't a position and as a result he hasn't responsibilities.

26. Although they are brothers Rudolf the fifth and Duke Michael, have different personalities. They are not alike. Illustrate.

- ✎ Rudolf the fifth has red hair whereas the Duke has black hair. Rudolf the fifth prefers hunting and good food whereas the Duke likes actions and has ambitions to be King.

27. What kind of a person do you think that Rudolf Rassendyll is?

- ✎ He is a carefree person who does not have any responsibilities in society.

28. If you were Rassendyll, would you prefer to travel to Ruritania or to stay in England to do useful work? Why?

- ✎ If I were Rassendyll, I would stay in England to do useful work because work makes the one responsible. Besides, life is not fun and play, it is also work and gain.



CHAPTER (2)

strange feeling	شعور غريب	symptoms	اعراض (مرض)
exactly	بالضبط	poisoning	تسمم
in silence	فى صمت	make the most of it	يستغل جيداً
bowed to	انحنى لـ	poisoned	مسمم
stepped forward	خطى للأمام	poisonous	سام
patiently	بصبر	perfect	كامل / تام
examined	فحص	ticked	دقة (للساعة)
differences	اختلافات	Poor king	الملك المسكين
forgive	يسامح	had no choice	لم يكن لديه خيار
double	شبيه / قرين	expression	تعبير
can't help	لا يستطيع ان يمنع	empty	فارغ / مهجور
cousin	ابن عم / خال	meanwhile	اثناء ذلك
palace	قصر	plan	خطة
personal servant	خادم خاص	overhear	يتصنت
dining room	غرفة الطعام	lock in	يحبس
generous	كريم - سخى	cellar	قبو / بدروم
amounts	كميات	realise	يدرك
delicious	لذيذ	uniform	زى رسمى / موحد
notice	يلاحظ	interests	اهتمامات
events	أحداث	weakness	ضعف
soldiers	جنود	behave	يتصرف
guards	حراس	surprised-looking	مندهش
meal	وجبة	alive	على قيد الحياة
cakes	كحك	cheer	يهتف - هتاف
ate hungrily	اكل بنهم	preparation	إعداد
covered in water	مغطى بالماء	formally	رسمياً
lying on the floor	ملقى على الارض	partly	جزئياً
breathe heavily	يتنفس بصعوبة	support	يؤيد - يساند
pulse	نبض	square	ميدان
coronation	تتويج	colourful ribbons	أشرطة ملونة
nevertheless	مع ذلك	balconies	شرفات
proud smile	ابتسامة فخر	delighted	مسرور
crown	تاج / يتوج	freezing cold	برد قارص
throne	عرش	wake up	يوقظ
poison	سم / يسمم	For that reason	لهذا السبب
lucky	محظوظ	stare at	يحملق فى

The chapter in brief

✎ The King and Rassendyll:

After a long time of surprise and silence between the King and Rassendyll, Rassendyll greeted the King by bowing to him. Colonel Sapt introduced Rassendyll to the King and while Sapt was talking with the King, Rassendyll examined the King carefully. Rassendyll found that he and the King were different in:

- 1) **The King's mouth was less wide.** 2) **Rassendyll's face was a little thinner.**

The King told Rassendyll that he was happy to meet him and he called him his cousin. Despite their happiness, the King and his two officers were afraid that Michael might see Rassendyll who looked exactly like the King. As a result, Fritz suggested that Rassendyll must leave Ruritania as it was not the suitable time for him to visit Ruritania. Sapt agreed with Fritz. However, the king insisted that Rassendyll must eat with him at that night.

✎ Having a meal with the King:

The four men headed for the hunting lodge where the King stayed to have a meal together there. At the hunting lodge there were two servants, Josef (the King's personal servant) and the other servant was Johann's mother. The four men sat on the table and Josef brought them generous amounts of food. The King and Rassendyll ate too much whereas Sapt and Fritz did not want to eat too much because of the events the next day. Josef brought the king cakes that were sent by Duke Michael to his brother. The King ate the cakes hungrily whereas Rassendyll ate only one. After the meal, everyone went to sleep.

✎ The King was poisoned:

At five o'clock in the morning, Sapt woke Rassendyll by pouring water on him. Fritz and Sapt took Rassendyll to see what had happened to the King. Rassendyll saw the King lying on the floor with a heavy breath. Rassendyll felt the King's pulse which was weak and slow. The three men agreed that the King was poisoned by the cakes which he ate and which his brother sent them to him.

✎ A critical situation (No choices):

The three men found that fetching a doctor would take time because they were in a remote part of the town. Sapt thought that if they announced the King's illness, the coronation would go for Duke Micheal (as he planned). To spoil Michael's wicked plan, Sapt had a clever plan. Sapt suggested that Rassendyll would take the place of the king making the best use of the great resemblance\ likeness between Rassendyll and the King. Sapt managed to persuade Rassendyll to impersonate the King. Fritz assured Rassendyll that no one would realize that he was not the King as Rassendyll looked exactly like him and that Rassendyll's German was perfect.

The Plan:

Sapt planned that he and Rassendyll would go on their horses to the palace. After the coronation and when they were alone, Fritz would guard the King's bedroom while Sapt and Rassendyll would go back again to the hunting lodge. Sapt would return with the real King whereas Rassendyll would leave Ruritania immediately. While the three men were talking about that plan, Johann's mother was watching them. Realizing that she overheard their plan, Fritz decided to lock Johann's mother in the cellar with the king.

The adventure started (carrying out the plan):

Sapt and Rassendyll dressed in uniforms and set off on horses. Sapt told Rassendyll everything about the King. He told him about the King's family, interests, weaknesses, friends and servants. He told him how to behave in the palace and said he would always be behind him to tell him who the people were that he met. Then, they reached Zenda station where they could take a train to Strelsau. At Zenda station, one of the guards looked at them surprisingly as they were early at the station but Fritz told him that the King had changed the plan. When the train stopped at Strelsau, everything was busy. Cleverly Rassendyll behaved as the real King always did when he asked for his breakfast. While Rassendyll (as a King) was having his breakfast at the station restaurant, people were cheering, "**God save the King**". But Sapt repeated saying, "**God save both kings**."

Heading for the palace:

Marshal Strakencz, a very important person in the army, welcomed the King and led him to the Palace. The Marshal apologized to the King (Rassendyll) that Duke Michael couldn't meet him at the station. The King (Rassendyll) began to ride through the capital with the Marshal on his right and Sapt on his left. On their way to the palace, Rassendyll noticed that the city was divided into two parts, an old part for the poor and a modern part for the rich. The poor were crowded into tiny houses which were old and hot in the summer, freezing cold in winter. As a result, the poor supported Duke Michael who promised them to live a better life. Rich people would support the king because they knew that nothing would change.

Unexpected surprise:

The King (Rassendyll) continued riding to the palace. People lined the streets clapping and cheering. Some people threw flowers down from their balconies. The King picked one flower and stuck it onto his coat. Suddenly, the King looked up and saw Antoinette de Mauban on one of the balconies. She was smiling proudly but her expression changed when she stared at Rassendyll. Rassendyll thought that she would cry out saying, "**He is not the real King**."

Questions & Answers

A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Why did Rassendyll and the King stand looking at each other in silence?**
 - a) Because the king was shot in his arm
 - b) Because Rassendyll was holding a gun.
 - c) Because they looked like each other so much.
 - d) Because they were very tired.
- 2. The King and Rassendyll were physically different in.....**
 - a) hair and nose.
 - b) mouth and face.
 - c) eyes and ears.
 - d) arms and legs.
- 3. What did the King call Rassendyll?**
 - a) He called him uncle.
 - b) He called him brother.
 - c) He called him half brother.
 - d) He called him cousin.
- 4. The King and Rassendyll are.....**
 - a) couples.
 - b) doubles.
 - c) twins.
 - d) pairs.
- 5. Why did Sapt and Fritz agree that Rassendyll mustn't go to the coronation?**
 - a) Because Rassendyll looked exactly like the King.
 - b) Because the Duke would kill Sapt and Fritz.
 - c) Because the Duke would kill Rassendyll.
 - d) Because Antoinette de Mauban saw Rassendyll before.
- 6. Josef was.....**
 - a) Sapt's personal servant.
 - b) Fritz's personal servant.
 - c) The King's personal servant.
 - d) Johann's brother.
- 7. Why did Sapt and Fritz von Tarlenheim not eat much that evening?**
 - a) They knew the food was poisoned.
 - b) They were not hungry.
 - c) They were very ill.
 - d) They did not want to eat much before the important coronation.
- 8. What did the Duke send the King at the end of the meal?**
 - a) He sent him poisoned cakes.
 - b) He sent him poisoned fruit.
 - c) He sent him poisoned water.
 - d) He sent him poisoned bread.

9. What was the effect of the poisoned cakes the King ate on him?

- a) He gained much weight.
- b) He shot Rassendyll.
- c) He could not wake up the next day.
- d) He got up fresh and energetic.

10. The cake Rassendyll ate had little effect on him so.....

- a) Sapt woke him up easily.
- b) Sapt poured water on him to wake him up.
- c) he couldn't get up at all the next day.
- d) he woke up early the next day.

11. Why did the Duke poison the King?

- a) To stop him from going to the coronation and be crowned instead of him.
- b) To measure the King's strength.
- c) To revenge his mother's death.
- d) To stop him from going to the wedding.

12. When the King was poisoned, Sapt suggested.....

- a) Fritz go and pretend to be the King.
- b) Rassendyll go and pretend to be the King.
- c) the collect soldiers to fight the Duke.
- d) Frtiz take the King to hospital.

13. How does Rassendyll feel about pretending to be the King?

- a) He is looking forward to it.
- b) He feels nervous.
- c) He feels confident.
- d) He loves it.

14. The King has to return to the palace in the dark because.....

- a) they don't want people to know that he was ill.
- b) he is not wearing the King's clothes.
- c) the poor people would attack him if they saw him.
- d) he is frightened of the Duke.

15. Rudolf Rassendyll has to leave the country before it's light so that.....

- a) the Duke can become King.
- b) nobody knows that he pretended to be the King.
- c) he can write a story about what happened.
- d) people don't think that he poisoned the King.

16. While Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll were talking about the plan of replacing the real King, Johann's mother.....

- a) was preparing breakfast.
- b) was sweeping the floor.
- c) was washing up.
- d) was overhearing them.

17. Why did they decide to lock Johann's mother with the King in the cellar?

- a) Because she stole Sapt's watch.
- b) Because she heard their plan and might tell the Duke.
- c) Because she poisoned the King.
- d) Because Johann was her son.

18. The people at Strelsau satation were cheering saying.....

- a) "God save the King."
- b) "God save both Kings."
- c) "Long live Ruritania."
- d) "Long live the King."

19. What does Sapt mean by saying, "God save both Kings."?

- a) He means the king and the Duke.
- b) He means the King and Fritz.
- c) He means the King and his father.
- d) He means the real King and the pretend King, Rassendyll.

20. Marshal Strackenz was.....

- a) an important person in the navy.
- b) an important person in the army.
- c) an important ambassador.
- d) an important diplomat.

21. What was the city of Strelsau like?

- a) It was modern.
- b) It was very old.
- c) It was a mixture of old and new buildings.
- d) It was very poor.

22. Why did the poor people in the capital want Duke Michael to become King?

- a) They wanted things to change.
- b) They wanted things to stay the same.
- c) They thought he was a lazy man.
- d) They wanted a war with King.

23. Why did the rich people in the capital want the new King to become King?

- a) They they knew that nothing would change.
- b) They wanted their lives to change.
- c) They thought he was a lazy man.
- d) They wanted a war with the Duke.

24. The Duke promised the poor to change their hard lives so.....

- a) they supportedd the new King to become King.
- b) they supported the Duke to be their King.
- c) they wanted Sapt to be their King.
- d) they wanted the Duke to kill the King.

25. Why do you think that Rassendyll was afraid when he saw Antoinette de Mauban on the balcony?

- a) Because he thought she might recognize him.
- b) Because she recognized him.
- c) Because she wanted to marry the King.
- d) Because she knew that he was not the King.

26. To spoil the Duke's plan, Sapt decided.....

- a) they must kill the Duke.
- b) they must tell the police about what the Duke had done.
- c) Rassendyll must go and prtend to be the King.
- d) Fritz must take soldiers to arrest the Duke.

27. What does Fritz mean by saying, "We must tell everyone what's happened and make the most of it."?

- a) He means that people would support them if they knew what the Duke had done.
- b) He means to take revenge on the Duke.
- c) He means people will come and treat the King.
- d) He means the Duke will kill them.

28. Why did the King say that Michael knew him well when the Duke sent him the cakes?

- a) Because Michael knew that the King liked food.
- b) Because Michael knew that the King would not eat the cakes.
- c) Because Michael knew that the king would give the cakes to Sapt.
- d) Because Michael knew that the King had a guest at the hunting lodge.

29. Sapt wanted Rassendyll to replace the King for.....

- a) all his life.
- b) one night.
- c) fortnight.
- d) three weeks.

30. Why did Sapt tell Rassendyll that they were lucky to meet him yesterday?

- a) Because the King liked Rassendyll very much and wanted him to work for him.
- b) Because Rassendyll had brought them plenty of food the king liked.
- c) because when the King was poisoned Rassendyll would take his place because he looked exactly like the King.
- d) Because Rassendyll would lend them the money they wanted.

31. To whom did the hunting lodge belong?

- a) To the King.
- b) To the Duke.
- c) To Johann.
- d) To Sapt.

32. The guard at zenda station was surprised on seeing the King Rassendyll on the station because.....

- a) Rassendyll looked exactly like the King.
- b) the King Rassendyll was earlier than the appointed time.
- c) The King Rassendyll was not wearing his hat.
- d) The King Rassendyll gave him a gold coin.

33. What would happen if the King did not attend the coronation?

- a) Sapt and Fritz would be killed.
- b) Sapt would be the King.
- c) by a drawbridge between it and the King's palace.
- d) Fritz would be the King.

34. What would happen if Rassendyll refused to go to Strelsau instead of the King?

- a) Sapt would be crowned King instead of the King.
- b) The Duke would be arrested and killed.
- c) The King would either be dead or in prison.
- d) Sapt and Fritz would not go to Strelsau.

35. Rassendyll was afraid that Antoinette de Mauban might cry out saying.....

- a) He is the real King.
- b) He is not the real King.
- c) She had saw him at Paris satation.
- d) She loved the Duke so much.

B) Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think Fritz says that it is not a good time for Rassendyll to visit Strelsau? How does the King react to Fritz's suggestion, and what does that tell you about the King?

- ✎ Perhaps Fritz thinks there will be problems with someone who looks so much like the King. The King seems surprised by the suggestion (He says, "What?") and asks Sapt what he thinks. Perhaps it means that the King is not very wise, or that he depends too much on other people for advice.

2. Why don't Fritz and Sapt eat very much? What advice do they give the King? Does he listen to them?

- ✎ They don't want to overeat because they have to get up early the next day. They advise the King not to eat too much. He doesn't listen to them.

3. What happens at the end of the meal? What is the result the next day?

- ✎ The servant brings some cakes from the Duke. The King eats a lot of them and is poisoned. He can't be woken up the next day.

4. Why do you think the Duke poisons the King?

- ✎ He hopes that the King will miss the coronation and that he (the Duke) will become the King instead.

5. Why do you think Rassendyll isn't as sick as the King?

- ✎ He is probably also poisoned because they have to throw water in his face to wake him up. But he ate only one cake, so he didn't eat as much poison. The King eats more, so he receives more poison.

6. Rassendyll tells himself that he has no choice but to pretend to be the King. Do you think he has a choice? Is there something else they can do?

- ✎ I don't think that Rassendyll has a choice as the time of coronation is too near and if the King does go to the coronation, the Duke will succeed in taking the crown.

7. How and when will they get the King to Strelsau?

- ✎ They will hide the King in the cellar of the lodge. At night, after the coronation, Sapt and Rassendyll will come back and get the King. Sapt will take him back to the palace, and Rassendyll will leave the country.

8. Who overhears their plan? What do they do with the person?

- ✎ Johann's mother (who is a servant to the Duke) overhears the plan. They tie her up and lock her in the cellar with the King. Josef will let her out later.

9. Why do they go to the station early instead of waiting for Duke Michael's guards?

- ✎ The Duke's guards have probably been told to kidnap or kill the King. They want to get out of the lodge and be on their way to the capital before the Duke's men come.

10. What is the first thing they do when they reach the capital?

Why aren't the people from the palace at the station in Strelsau to meet them?

- ✎ The first thing they do is eat breakfast at the train station. The palace people aren't there yet because the King (Rassendyll) arrived earlier than planned.

11. Why do you think Rassendyll is afraid when he sees Antoinette de Mauban?

- ✎ Her expression changes, so he thinks she recognises that he is not the real King. He is afraid that she will shout out and tell others.

12. Why do you think the King and Rassendyll stand in silence on seeing each other for the first time in the forest?

✎ Because they found it hard to believe that they looked like each other as if they were identical twins.

13. Why do you think it is not a good time for Rassendyll to visit Strelsau?

✎ Because the correspondence \ likeness \ resemblance between him and the King would make a problem at the time of coronation.

14. Why do you think the King calls Rassendyll 'cousin'?

✎ He calls him his cousin because of the affinity between the Elphbergs and the Rassendylls.

15. Why do you think Michael wants to get rid of kill \ poison the King?

✎ Because he want to be the king of Ruritania instead of his brother.

16. Why do you think Sapt pours water on Rassendyll to wake him up?

✎ He pours water on him as the poisoned cake he ate has a little effect on him.

17. What does Michael do in order to stop the King from being crowned?

What is Michael's wicked plan to stop his brother from being crowned?

✎ He poisons him. \ He puts poison in his food.

18. How could Sapt and Fritz spoil Michael's plan to be a king instead of his brother?

✎ They decide that Rassendyll would replace \ impersonate the King.

19. What are the symptoms of poisoning on the real king?

✎ His pulse is weak and slow and his breath is heavy.

20. What is Sapt's plan for returning the ill King to his palace?

✎ Sapt and Rassendyll would go on their horses to the palace. After the coronation, Fritz would guard the King's bedroom while Sapt and Rassendyll would go back again to the hunting lodge. Sapt would return with the real King whereas Rassendyll would leave Ruritania immediately.

21. Why does Fritz lock Johann's mother in the cellar with the King?

✎ Because she overhears them and knows their plan.

22. Why is the guard at Zenda station surprised on seeing the King (Rassendyll)?

✎ Because the King is an hour earlier than the appointed time.

23. How is Strelsau divided?

Strelsau has two contradicted areas. Discuss.

✎ It is divided into two parts, an old part for the poor and a modern part for the rich.

24. What did Rassendyll expect when Antoinette's expression changed?

✎ He expected that she would cry saying that he was not the King.

25. The King paid the price of his gluttony \ being glutton \ insatiable. Explain.

✎ Although he ate too much, he ate too much of the poisonous cakes that Michael sent him. As a result he was seriously ill

26. Duke Michael is mischievous \ villain \ devil. Illustrate.

✎ He wants to be the king so he poisons his brother in order to stop him from being crowned.

27. The King is lucky to meet Rassendyll. How?

✎ When the King is poisoned, it is suggested that Rassendyll will replace him for the great resemblance between them.

28. Why is it easy for Rassendyll to impersonate the King successfully?

✎ Because of the great resemblance between them. Moreover, Rassendyll spoke German perfectly.

29. What will happen if Rassendyll refuse to impersonate the King?

✎ Duke Michael will be crowned a king instead of the King.

30. What favour does Rassendyll do for the King?

✎ He agrees to take his place when he was seriously ill.

31. Why is Rassendyll afraid when he saw Antoinette on the balcony?

✎ Because when she stares at him, her expression changed. He is afraid that she might tell the people about the truth. (He is not the King).

32. Which character is wiser in your opinion, Fritz or Sapt? Say why?

✎ I think Sapt is wiser than Fritz because Sapt prefers to take matters slowly and patiently whereas Fritz is rush and outgoing.

33. Do you think Rassendyll was lucky to look exactly like the King of Ruritania? Why?

✎ No, I don't think so because the King of Ruritania was lazy and glutton and had many problems in his life and but for Rassendyll he would have died.

34. Why do you think Duke Michael tried to get rid of his brother by poisoning him instead of any other way?

✎ Duke Michael only wanted to stop his brother from being crowned only, he didn't want to kill him. He just wanted to be crowned instead of him.

35. If you were Rassendyll, would you agree to risk your life and replace the King? Why?

✎ Yes, I would agree because nobility and chivalry would push me to do so.

36. Why do you think that Rudolf really believed that he was the King in the capital city?

✎ Because no one ever noticed that he was not the real King and everything around him gave him the feeling that he was the real King. People filled the streets cheering and clapping.

37. What do you think might have happened if Sapt and Fritz had been poisoned like the King?

✎ The Duke would have crowned a King and they all might have been dead or in prison.

38. Why do you think that Sapt and Rassendyll left the palace through a secret tunnel?

✎ Because they didn't want anyone to know about their plan "replacing the King".

39. Why do you think that Sapt and Fritz locked up Johann's mother with the King?

✎ To stop her from telling Michael about their plan, " replacing the King."

40. Why do you think that Sapt told Rassendyll the history of the King's life?

✎ To help him act\do his role as a King well without making mistakes.

dress as	يتكر فى زى...	signature	توقيع
call out	ينادى	copy	ينسخ / نسخة
recognise	يميز	pretend	يدعى / يتظاهر
loyal to	لدية ولاء لـ	panel	لوح خشب
support	يساند - يدعم	passage	ممر
ahead of	أمام.....	unlock	يفتح
trust	يثق - ثقة	gates	بوابات
nevertheless	الا ان	knock on	يطرق على
give orders	يعطى اوامر	form	إستمارة
anxious	قلق	coin	عملة معدنية
position	مكانة	eventually	فى النهاية
out of sight	بعيدا عن الانظار	fork	مفترق طرق
lined with	ملىء بصفوف من	whisper	همس / يهمس
cheer	يهتف - هتاف	trap	فخ / مصيدة
close to	قريب من	torn	ممزق
anger	غضب	handkerchiefs	مناديل
briefly	بإختصار	candle	شمعة
expression	تعبير	fight	يقاتل
coronation	تتويج	spiders	عناكب
princess	أميرة	kidnap	يختطف (شخص)
red cheeks	خدود حمراء	compared to	مقارنة بـ
golden crown	التاج الذهبى	excitedly	ببهجة
promises	وعود	continue	يستمر
read out	يقرأ بصوت مرتفع	escape to	يهرب الى
shook with anger	يرتعد غاضبا	escape from	يهرب من
coldly	برود	the front door	الباب الامامى
congratulations	تهانى	completely silent	صامت تماما
ambassadors	سفراء	real puzzle	لغز حقيقى
greet	يحيى	a permit	تصريح / إذن
coach	عربة حنطور	all is well	كله تمام / بخير
wedding	زفاف	plan	خطة
serious	جاد / خطير	get off	ينزل من على
appreciate	يقدر	somehow	بطريقة ما

The chapter in brief

A brave \ courageous \ dare deed:

The King (Rassendyll) rode on through streets of Strelsau towards the palace expecting to hear Antoinette tell everyone that he was not the real King. However, he heard nothing. Perhaps she had not recognized him.

The Marshal gave an order to his men to enter a poor part of the town where the people were loyal to Duke Michael. When The King asked the marshal why they had changed their route, the Marshal told him that was better that way. The King (Rassendyll) thought that the Marshal might have wanted to test him. Bravely Rassendyll (The King) decided to move alone through the old town to prove to those people (The Poor) that their King trusted them.

Inside the old town alone:

Although The Marshal and Sapt were against the idea that the King might continue alone in the old part of the town, the King did it. One of the people in that poor area was surprised that the King was on his own and that he was taller than he imagined. Another one said that the King's skin was very white. Although some people smiled and cheered, others were quiet and looked at the King angrily. The King reached the outside of the palace safely.

The coronation:

When the coronation started, there were many different people. Rassendyll could remember a beautiful young lady who was called Princess Flavia and a man with red cheeks, dark eyes and dark hair (Duke Michael). When Duke Michael saw the King (Rassendyll) his face became white.

The King read out the promises and it was announced that King Rudolf the Fifth was King of Ruritania. Duke Michael congratulated the new King coldly. On the other hand, ambassadors and important men greeted the new King. The King (Rassendyll) saw an important man whom he knew from England. Luckily, that man, who was called Lord Topham, greeted the King without noticing him as he had poor eyesight.

A tour round the streets with Princess Flavia:

The King went in a coach around the streets with Princess Flavia. Flavia noticed that the King looked different. She told the King that he looked tired, serious and thinner. The King told Flavia that he wanted to change because he was now a king. Flavia told the King that she was surprised when she heard that he rode through the old town alone. She thought that people there must have appreciated that brave deed.

The coach arrived back the palace and the King took his seat at his own table with Duke Michael next to him and Fritz behind him. After that, the King went to bed with Sapt and Fritz by his side. Their plan had succeeded.

Alone in the palace :

The three men talked about that wonderful day (the coronation day) . It was a day to remember \ unforgettable day. Fritz told Rassendyll that he mustn't risk his life again as he did on the coronation day when Rassendyll insisted on riding through the old town alone. Rassendyll thought his adventure was over but Sapt told him that the Duke had had news from Zenda about them and that he (the Duke) was planning something. Sapt asked Rassendyll to leave Ruritania as soon as possible before Michael could kill him. To leave Ruritania, Rassendyll needed to get a permit from the King. Consequently, Sapt brought him a form and asked him to copy the King's signature from other paper. Rassendyll told Sapt that was hard for him to copy the King's signature but Sapt did it (signed the form) easily for him.

Going Back to Zenda \ Completing the plan:

Sapt told Fritz to guard the King's bedroom and not to allow anyone to enter even if his life depended on it. After that, Sapt gave Rassendyll a hat and a coat to wear. Sapt and Rassendyll saw Fritz off and set off through a panel in the wall which led to a dark passage. Rassendyll followed Sapt down the long, dark passage till they reached a wooden door. Sapt unlocked the door and the two men went out into a quiet street. There was a man who was

waiting for them with two horses. The two men climbed onto the horses and rode away. Rassendyll tried to stay low on the horse in order not to be recognized. Sapt told Rassendyll to take his gun to protect himself in time of danger. The two men reached a tall wooden gate at half past six. When Sapt knocked on the door, a little girl opened it. The girl refused to allow them to pass because her father hadn't been there. But when Sapt showed the girl the signed form from the King giving her a coin, she allowed them to pass. The two men were outside the city and the danger became little as people were busy celebrating the coronation.

Rassendyll and Sapt stopped at an inn and they had rested there for half an hour. At half past nine and while they were riding their horses, Sapt heard something. It was the noise of horses coming towards them from behind. The two men set off fast till they couldn't hear the other horses. They slowed down and stopped suddenly when they heard the other horses again. Sapt put his ear to the ground to estimate the distance between those horses. The other horses were two kilometers behind them. The two men went on quickly and stopped at a fork in the road. To the right was their road (the hunting lodge) and on their left was the castle. Sapt asked Rassendyll to get off his horse and they took their horses into the dark trees and waited quietly. Sapt wanted to know who those people were and where they were going. The moon was full which helped them to see clearly. The people were the Duke and a strong looking man who was called Max Holf. Max Holf was Johann's brother.

✂ A surprise in the forest:

The Duke and Max stopped at the fork to decide which way to take, to the right or to the left. Max told the Duke that they should go to the castle (to the left) to know the truth. The Duke wondered why they couldn't go to the hunting lodge and Max told him that if all was well why they would go to the hunting lodge. The Duke and Max decided to go to Zenda (the castle).

✂ Josef was killed and the King was kidnapped:

Rassendyll and Sapt waited for ten minutes till the Duke and Max had been away. Sapt wished to know what was meant by all was well. They rode fast to the hunting lodge and they reached it, it was dark and quiet and no one had come to meet them. Sapt took hold of Rassendyll's hand. They found torn handkerchiefs on the ground. They were the handkerchiefs that Sapt had tied Johann's mother with. They entered the lodge and ran down to the cellar and they found the cellar door was open. Inside the cellar there was a locked door and it took him a lot of work to open it. When they entered, the room was dark so they used a candle. Inside that room they found a corpse. They found Josef dead and the King was not there. Rassendyll told Sapt that they must go back to Strelsau and collect every soldier to catch \ arrest the Duke before he could kill the kidnapped King. Sapt told Rassendyll that the game with Duke must continue. They would go back to Strelsau and Rassendyll would be the King again.



Questions & Answers

A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Why did not Antoinette cry out saying that Rassendyll was not the real King?**
 - a) Perhaps she had not recognized him.
 - b) Perhaps Rassendyll promised to give her a reward.
 - c) Perhaps she didn't want to be in trouble.
 - d) Perhaps she preferred to tell the Duke.
- 2. What did Rassendyll think when the Marshal gave orders to enter the old town?**
 - a) He thought the Marshal wanted to kill him.
 - b) He thought the Marshal was planning to kidnap him.
 - c) He thought the Marshal was testing him.
 - d) He thought the Marshal went crazy.
- 3. What did Rassendyll do when the Marshal gave orders to enter the old town?**
 - a) Rassendyll insisted on entering the old town without a close guard.
 - b) Rassendyll obeyed the Marshal's order.
 - c) Rassendyll asked Sapt what to do.
 - d) Rassendyll asked Fritz to enter with him.
- 4. To prove to the poor people that the King trusted them, Rassendyll.....**
 - a) decided to give them money.
 - b) decided to solve their problems.
 - c) decided to kill the real King.
 - d) decided to enter the old town alone.
- 5. What would happen to Sapt if Rassendyll was killed in the old town?**
 - a) Sapt's position would become very good.
 - b) Sapt's position would become very good.
 - c) Sapt would be King instead.
 - d) Sapt would be arrested.
- 6. What did Rassendyll do to surprise Sapt and the Marshal when they first arrived in Strelsau?**
 - a) He wanted to ride through the old town alone.
 - b) He wanted to lead all the soldiers.
 - c) He wanted to meet Duke Michael.
 - d) He wanted to marry Princess Flavia.
- 7. What did the people in the old town do on seeing Rassendyll (the King) on his horse alone?**
 - a) All of them smiled and cheered.
 - b) All of them attacked him.
 - c) Some of them smiled and cheered, others were quiet and looked at him angrily.
 - d) All of them were quiet and looked at him angrily.
- 8. When Duke Michael saw Rassendyll (the King) at the coronation,.....**
 - a) His eyes became red.
 - b) He shouted at him.
 - c) His face became white.
 - d) He killed him.

9. The Duke congratulated Rassendyll (the King).....

- a) warmly.
- b) quietly.
- c) happily.
- d) coldly.

10. Lord Topham could not recognize Rassendyll because.....

- a) he did not know him.
- b) his eyes were so poor.
- c) he had amnesia.
- d) he did not greet me.

11. What did Princess Flavia think of the King (Rassendyll) after the coronation?

- a) She thought that he was the same.
- b) She thought that he had changed.
- c) She knew that he wasn't the King.
- d) She didn't like him.

12. Who was Princess Flavia?

- a) She was the King's sister.
- b) She was the King's cousin and his fiancée.
- c) She was the King's assistant and his fiancée.
- d) She was the King's niece.

13. To leave Strelsau, Rassendyll and Sapt needed.....

- a) a permit from Duke Michael.
- b) a permit from Princess Flavia.
- c) a permit from the King.
- d) a permit from Fritz.

14. Why did Sapt and Rassendyll need a permit to leave Strelsau?

- a) Because all the city gates were closed at that time.
- b) Because the King was sleeping at that time.
- c) Because Antoinette would arrest them.
- d) Because the people were filling the streets.

15. How did Rassendyll and Sapt get a permit to leave Strelsau?

- a) Rassendyll copied the King's signature on a form.
- b) The King signed the form himself.
- c) Sapt copied the King's signature on a form.
- d) Fritz brought them the form.

16. How did Sapt and Rassendyll leave the Palace?

- a) through the city walls.
- b) through a large gate.
- c) through a secret passage.
- d) through a cave.

17. Why did the girl at the city gate refuse to open the door for Sapt and Rassendyll?

- a) Because she knew that Rassendyll was not the real King.
- b) Because her father was not there.
- c) Because her mother was not there.
- d) Because she was afraid of them.

18. When Sapt showed the gate girl the signed form and gave her a coin, she.....

- a) opened the gate for them.
- b) prepared them a good meal.
- c) hurried to tell the Duke.
- d) insisted on refusing to open the gate.

19. Sapt went off his horse and put his ear on the ground to.....

- a) look for underground water.
- b) predict an earthquake.
- c) know the storm speed.
- d) know who were behind them.

20. Where did the two ways at the fork lead to?

- a) To the right was the castle of zenda and to the left was the hunting loadge.
- b) To the right was hunting loadge and to the left was castle of zenda.
- c) To the right was King's palace and to the left was the hunting loadge.
- d) To the right was Flavia's palace and to the left was the hunting loadge.

21. Why did Sapt and Rassendyll get off their horses at the fork?

- a) To give the horses a rest.
- b) To have a rest.
- c) To know who were the people coming behind them.
- d) To wait for Fritz.

22. Who were the people that were behind Sapt and Rassendyll?

- a) They were the King and Fritz.
- b) They were the Duke and a man called Max Holf.
- c) They were the Duke and Johann.
- d) They were Princess Falvia and the Duke.

23. At the fork in the forest, the Duke and Max.....

- a) decided to go to the castle.
- b) decided to go to the hunting loadge.
- c) decided to wait for Sapt and Rassendyll to appear.
- d) decided to have a rest for half an hour.

24. What do Sapt and Rassendyll find when they return to the loadge in the forest?

- a) the body of the King.
- b) the body of Josef.
- c) the Duke.
- d) an empty house.

25. When Sapt saw the torn handkerchiefs outside the hunting loadge,.....

- a) he realized Johann's mother escaped.
- b) he realized that Josef was killed.
- c) he realized that the King was killed.
- d) he realized that the King had a flu.

26. When did Sapt and Rassendyll understand the message, "all's well"?

- a) When they reached the hunting loadge and found the King was missing and Josef was killed.
- b) When they reached the castle and saw the King there.
- c) When they went outside the city gate.
- d) When they saw the Duke and Max at the fork.

27. The message, "all's well" means that.....

- a) the King was safe.
- b) the Duke's men had kidnapped the King and killed Josef.
- c) the king was taken to a big hospital.
- d) the Duke's men had killed the King and Josef.

28. When Sapt and Rassendyll found that the King was Kidnapped by the Duke's men, Sapt decided.....

- a) to tell the police about what had the Duke done.
- b) to collect soldiers and attack the Duke.
- c) to escape with Rassendyll to London.
- d) to persuade Rassendyll to continue to pretend to be the King.

29. At the coronation, Princess Flavia was so observant that.....

- a) she noticed that the Duke was very angry.
- b) she noticed that the King had changed.
- c) she noticed that Sapt was not very happy.
- d) she noticed that the King became so funny.

30. Why did not Sapt shoot the Duke at the fork?

- a) Because he realized it would not have helped the king.
- b) Because he knew he would be arrested if he did so.
- c) Because he did not have enough bullets.
- d) Because Rassendyll asked him not to do so.

31. How was Josef killed?

- a) He ate from the poisoned cakes.
- b) He committed suicide.
- c) The Duke's men killed him and kidnapped the King.
- d) The Marshal killed him.

32. When Sapt and Rassendyll were outside the city, the danger was little as.....

- a) nearly everyone was in the streets celebrating the coronation.
- b) nearly everyone was sleeping.
- c) the Duke had left Strelsau.
- d) all the people went to visit the King at the hunting lodge.

33. At the fork, Max told the Duke that.....

- a) they should go to Flavia's palace.
- b) they should go back to Strelsau.
- c) they should go to the hunting lodge.
- d) they should go to the castle.

34. When they discovered that the King was kidnapped and Josef was killed, Rassendyll suggested that.....

- a) he should continue to pretend to be a King again.
- b) they should tell the Marshal what had happened.
- c) they get back and collect every soldier in Strlesau to catch Michael.
- d) they should run away to escape death.

35. On putting his ear on the ground, Sapt.....

- a) told Rassendyll that there were two horses behind them and they are 2 kilometres behind.
- b) told Rassendyll that there were three horses behind them and they are 2 kilometres behind.
- c) told Rassendyll that there were two horses behind them and they are 16 kilometres behind.
- d) told Rassendyll that there were two horses behind them and they are 10 kilometres behind.

B) Critical thinking questions:**1. What kind of people live in the old part of the city?****What does Rassendyll do when the Marshal wants him to ride through the old part of town?**

- ✎ The people in the old part are poor and many of them are loyal to Duke Michael. Rassendyll tells the soldiers to ride ahead and behind him, not next to him, so that he can show the people that he trusts them.

2. Why is Sapt so anxious about Rassendyll's decision to ride alone through the old town?

- ✎ He knows that the people in the old town support the Duke and he is afraid that Rassendyll will be hurt or attacked there.

3. Why does Duke Michael's face turn white when he sees the King (Rassendyll)?

- ✎ He thought that the King was still in Zenda (because he had poisoned him), so he is surprised to see the King here at the coronation.

4. Does Michael realise that this is not the real King? How do you know?

- ✎ Yes, Michael knows Rassendyll is not the real King. First, Michael knows (or thinks) that the King is poisoned and still in Zenda. And the words in the story tell us: "No one else ... seemed to realise that it was not the real King." This means Michael realised it but no other person.

5. Does the Princess know that this is not the real King?**What does she say about him?**

- ✎ She thinks this is the real King, but she says that he has changed. He is more tired and serious, and also thinner.

6. What does Fritz do while Sapt and Rassendyll go to Zenda?

- ✎ He stays and guards the bedroom. He must not let anyone inside the room.

7. How do Sapt and Rassendyll get out of the palace? Why do they go this way?

- ✎ They go through a secret passage in the wall and out of a secret back door. They do this because they don't want anyone to see them and they want people to think that the King is in his bedroom.

8. Who else is riding to Zenda? Which way do they go at the fork in the road?**Which way do Sapt and Rassendyll go?**

- ✎ Duke Michael and his servant Max Holf are riding to Zenda. They decide to go to the castle. Sapt and Rassendyll go to the hunting lodge.

9. What do you think the message "all is well" means?

- ✎ It probably means that the King is captured, as that is what the Duke was planning, but there may be other details that are also "well".

10. What do Sapt and Rassendyll find inside the lodge?

- ✎ Johann's mother and the King are gone. Josef is killed.

11. What does Sapt want Rassendyll to do?

- ✎ He wants him to continue to pretend to be the King.

12. Why didn't Antoinette tell anyone that Rassendyll was not the King?

- ✎ Perhaps she had not recognized him well.

13. What did Rassendyll think when the Marshal ordered his men to change their route (to enter the poor part of the town)?

- ✎ He thought that the Marshal wanted to test him.

14. - What courageous (dare) act (deed) did Rassendyll do when the Marshal ordered his men to enter the old town?

- Rassendyll (as a king) was adventurous \ brave \ courageous risky. How?
- On his way to the palace, Rudolf Rassendyll, who pretended to be the King, did what the real King had never done. Discuss.

✎ Rassendyll insisted on riding alone through the poor part of the city although he knew it was very dangerous to do so.

15. Why was it dangerous for the King (Rassendyll) to ride alone through the old town?

✎ Because people at the old town supported Duke Michael not the King.

16. Give two reasons for Rassendyll's insistence to ride alone in the old part?

- a) Rassendyll wanted to succeed in the Marshal's test.
- b) Rassendyll wanted the poor people to see that their king trusted them.

17. What would happen to Sapt if the King (Rassendyll) was killed in the old town?

✎ His position would become very difficult.

18. How did the people have contradicted feelings when they saw Rassendyll?

✎ Although some people smiled and cheered, others were quiet and looked at him angrily.

19. How far was the Duke popular with the poor people?

✎ The poor people put the Duke's paintings in their windows as they supported him. Rassendyll saw Duke Michael with his red cheeks, dark eyes and dark hair.

20. Why were people at the old town surprised when they saw the King (Rassendyll)?

✎ Because the King was on his own \ alone with no guards with him.

21. What was Duke Michael's reaction as soon as he saw Rassendyll before the coronation?

✎ His face became white.

22. As Duke Michael was congratulating Rassendyll after the coronation, his hands shook with anger. Give a reason.

✎ Because he knew that Rassendyll wasn't the King but he couldn't speak because people would ask him where the real King was.

23. What did Princess Flavia notice about the King "Rassendyll"?

Princess Flavia was a good observant. Illustrate.

✎ She noticed that the King (Rassendyll) looked different. She thought that he was more tired, serious and thinner.

24. What did Rassendyll tell Flavia when she told him that he had changed?

✎ He told her that he wanted to change because he became a king.

25. Why did Sapt tell Rassendyll that he must leave Ruritania as soon as possible when the coronation ended safely?

✎ Because he thought that Duke Michael was planning something.

26. From whom must Rassendyll get a permit to leave Ruritania?

✎ From the real King.

27. Why did Rassendyll try to stay low on the horse when they got out the palace?

✎ So that no one could recognize him.

28. Why was the danger little when Sapt and Rassendyll were outside the city?

✎ Because everyone was in the streets celebrating the coronation.

29. Why did Sapt put his ear on the ground when he heard horses noise behind them?

✎ He wanted to know how far those horses were away from them.

30. To where did the fork in the road lead?

✎ The fork had two ways. The right led to the hunting lodge and the left led to the castle.

31. What did Sapt ask Rassendyll to do when they knew that the King was kidnapped?

✎ He asked him to complete the game. To be a king again.

32. Why did Sapt ask Rassendyll to pretend to be the King after the coronation day?

✎ Because the real King was missing from the lodge/taken by Michael's men.

33. Why do you think that Rassendyll remembered very little of the coronation?

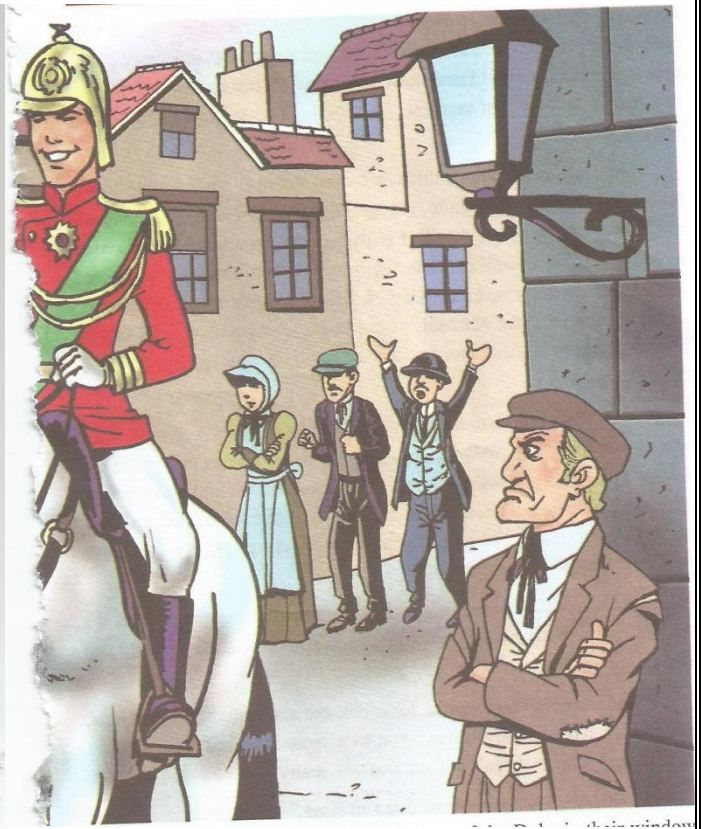
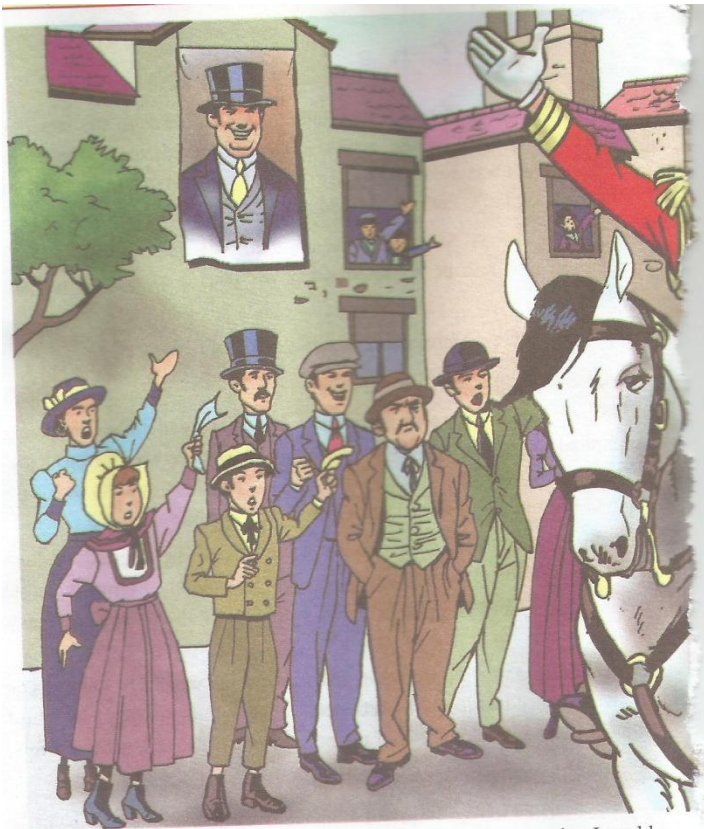
✎ Because during the whole coronation, Rassendyll was afraid to be discovered by anyone.

34. Why do you think that Rassendyll says that a pretend King's life is harder than a real King's?

✎ Because a real King is doing his role without being afraid of anyone whereas a pretend King is afraid of being discovered at any time. A pretend King must be very careful with any thing he does.

35. Do you think it was a good idea for Rassendyll to give due care to the poor? Why?

✎ Yes, because a true King should give due care to all sects of his people not only a specific kind of them.





CHAPTER (4)

pretend	يتظاهر / يدعى	bow down	ينحنى
exactly	بالضبط	serious	خطير / جاد
mad	محنون	find out	يكتشف
shoulder	كتف	prisoner	سجين
look deep	ينظر بعمق	duties	واجبات
the real king	الملك الحقيقي	ambassador	سفير
guilt	ذنب	either	ايضا
kidnap	يختطف	documents	وثائق
doubts	شكوك	accuse of	يتهم بـ
a risk	مخاطرة	in public	على الملأ
belong to	يخص / ينتمى لـ	admit	يعترف
dead	ميت	stalemate	مأزق / معضلة
madder than	أكثر جنونا من	guard	يحرص
success	نجاح	dead	ميت
realise	يدرك	The six Men	الرجال الست
moonlight	ضوء القمر	Loyal to	لديه ولاء لـ
spades	جواريف	Belgian	بلجيكي
evil men	رجال أشرار	whatever	مهما
fights	معارك	foreigners	أجانب
knock off	يسقط من على	keep secrets	يحتفظ بأسرار
trap	يحبس - فخ	popular	محبوب / مشهور
gap	فجوة	actually	فعلا / بالفعل
was shot	أصيب بطلق نارى	distant king	ملك بعيد (عن شعبة)
ahead of	أمام	guest room	غرفة الضيوف
breathless	متوقف النفس	special soldiers	جنود خاصة
bandage	ضمادة	serious mistake	خطأ فادح
in silence	فى صمت	bite\bit\bitten	يعض
farm	مزرعة	splendid	رائع / بديع
head off	ينطلق	permission	إذن / تصريح
celebrations	احتفالات	feelings	مشاعر
finger	إصبع	fighter	مقاتل
trust	يثق - ثقة	jump to his feet	يقفز لأعلى
secret door	باب سرى	accent	لهجة

Summary

Rassendyll's fears \ doubts:

Before leaving the hunting lodge, Rassendyll told Sapt about what he had thought about being a king again. Rassendyll told Sapt that the idea of pretending to be the King was a dangerous and a mad idea. Rassendyll was afraid of the Duke as the Duke knew where the real King had been. Sapt comforted Rassendyll by telling him that the Duke couldn't say anything without showing his guilt (kidnapping the real King). Rassendyll told Sapt about his fears as Princess Flavia thought the King had changed. Although it was a risk, Sapt begged Rassendyll to complete the game for the sake of Ruritania. Finally Rassendyll asked Sapt what if the real King was already dead. Sapt told Rassendyll that if the King was killed, he (Rassendyll) would be a king but Sapt thought that the real King would be alive if Rassendyll was still in the capital. The two men agreed that the new plan would be madder than the first one.

The fight (Face to face with the Duke's men):

While Rassendyll and Sapt were preparing themselves to leave the hunting lodge, they suddenly saw a big group of men coming down the road of Zenda. Four were riding horses and four or five were walking. They were the Duke's men and they were carrying spades. Those men were coming to bury Josef's body. On seeing those men, Rassendyll told Sapt that some of those men must be killed to revenge to poor Josef. Rassendyll and Sapt prepared themselves for the fight. When those men arrived at the front of the hunting lodge, Rassendyll and Sapt began the attack. The men were shocked and surprised because they were not prepared. Rassendyll knocked one man off his horse and hit another big man with his sword. Within few seconds, Rassendyll found himself surrounded by those men. Luckily, Rassendyll could see a gap among the men and he could escape through it. While he was escaping, Rassendyll was shot. While he was trying to catch up with Sapt, one of the men shot Rassendyll in his finger. The two men (Sapt and Rassendyll) were safe and could escape from the trap. Sapt made Rassendyll a bandage on his wounded finger.

Heading off Strelsau:

Rassendyll and Sapt moved on their horses till they reached a farm. Rassendyll covered his face in order not to be recognized by any one. Rassendyll told the farmer, who welcomed them, that he had a bad tooth. After they had rested at the kind farmer's house, the two men headed off the capital. At that time (9.00 a.m.) all the city gates were opened. The people were sleeping after celebrating the historic coronation. Freyler, one of Sapt's servants, was waiting them. When Freyler asked what wrong was with the King, Sapt told him that the King had caught his finger in a door. Sapt also asked Freyler not to tell anyone that the King had been out on his horse. Quietly Sapt told Rassendyll that Freyler was a good servant but sometimes it was best not to trust even the best of men.



Reaching the palace:

Sapt opened the secret door and they went back inside the palace.



When they reached the King's room, Fritz was asleep and funnily he jumped up on hearing Sapt and Rassendyll. Fritz didn't recognize that the person in front of him was Rassendyll not the real King. Sapt laughed and he thought that their plan would succeed. While they were telling Fritz about what had happened, they heard a knock on the door. Rassendyll hurried to the King's bedroom and pretended to be asleep. The visitor was one of Princess Flavia's servants. Flavia's servant wanted to know if the King was well or not. The King (Rassendyll) asked the servant to reassure the Princess and to thank her. When the servant left, Sapt told Fritz that the Duke was holding the real King prisoner.

Rassendyll as a king again:

Sapt took three hours to tell Rassendyll about the King's duties. Rassendyll was worried when he met a French ambassador who asked him a question that Rassendyll couldn't answer. Due to Rassendyll's injury in his finger, many important documents were not completed. Rassendyll wanted to rest but Fritz told him that they mustn't waste any time.

A stalemate \ dilemma

Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz discussed what their next step would be. Sapt told Rassendyll and Fritz that Duke Michael wouldn't kill the King because if he did so Rassendyll would be a king instead. Sapt also added that the Duke would not say anything about Rassendyll because then people would know that he had kidnapped the king. Rassendyll explained that they couldn't accuse the Duke in public without admitting that Rassendyll was not the real King. After hearing that, Fritz thought that it was a stalemate \ dilemma.

The Duke's Six Men:

Fritz told Sapt and Rassendyll that half of Michael's Six Men were in Strelsau with the Duke and the other half were guarding the real King in Zenda. Fritz told Rassendyll that the Duke had six special soldiers whom Michael kept in his house at all times. Those men were loyal to the Duke. Three of them were from Ruritania and three were foreigners. The foreigners were a Belgian, French and an English man. Sapt told Rassendyll that those men were ready to do anything for Michael. Fritz told Sapt that the three men who were in Strelsau with the Duke were the three foreigners: De Gautet, Bersoni and Detchard.

**Being a popular King \ be secretive again:**

Rassendyll as a king decided to be popular with his people. He decided not to say anything bad about the Duke. He also wanted to gain the poor people's support in order to make them stand with him if there would be a fight with the Duke. The next day Rassendyll (as a king) rode through the park with Fritz. On seeing the King (Rassendyll) in the park, people bowed to him. Rassendyll wanted to be seen most in the old town. He also decided not to be a distant king. Rassendyll stopped to buy flowers from a poor young girl with a gold coin. That incident attracted a lot of interest and soon hundreds of people were following him on his way to the home of Princess Flavia.

✎ Visiting Princess Flavia:

Rassendyll also knew that Flavia was popular and he wanted to gain her support. Rassendyll and Fritz went to visit the Princess. On reaching there, Rassendyll (as a king) was shown into a guest room and soon the Princess arrived with her servants. Flavia told the King (Rassendyll) that he had completely changed since he became King. Rassendyll told her that she needn't call him sir as they were still cousins. When Flavia told Rudolf that his face had changed, Rudolf told her that the Duke was still in Strelsau. Rassendyll told Flavia that it was better to keep the Duke near him. Flavia told Rudolf that he wanted the Duke near him to know what he (the Duke) was doing but Rudolf told her that he wanted him to be near because he was his half brother. When Rassendyll told Flavia that he had heard that the Duke couldn't stay in Strelsau for very long, the Princess looked at him strangely. Suddenly they heard a loud cheer outside. It was Duke Michael who was coming to Flavia's house. That news surprised Rassendyll that he and the Princess stayed in silence for a long time. Rassendyll made a serious mistake when he forgot to allow the Duke to enter because the Duke couldn't enter without the King's permission. When Rassendyll realized his mistake, he stood up and went to bring the Duke. Rassendyll apologized to the angry Duke and they both entered the guest room.

✎ Hidden feelings\ words:

Rassendyll (as a king) and the Duke sat together and when the Duke asked Rassendyll what had happened to his finger, Rassendyll told him that an animal had bitten him. When Flavia asked Rassendyll if the animal's bite was dangerous, Rassendyll told her not from that. While Rassendyll was telling Flavia about that animal, he was looking at the Duke. When the Duke understood Rassendyll's hints, he asked him what he would do if the animal's (the Duke) bite was poisonous. Rassendyll told the Duke that he would knock that animal on the head. Michael told Rassendyll that the animal might bite again and Rassendyll told him that he was sure that he would try. When Rassendyll became worried that the Duke might say something that he didn't want to hear, he decided to change the subject. Rassendyll thanked the Duke for the splendid coronation and that his soldiers were fine. He thanked him also for the great time he had had at the hunting lodge. On hearing that, the Duke jumped to his feet and went towards the door telling Rassendyll that three of his friends were waiting outside and they wanted to meet him (the King). The Duke introduced the three men to the King. The three men were the three foreigners. Rassendyll spoke with the Englishman using a foreign accent. The Englishman smiled when he heard the King (Rassendyll) speaking in that way. On doing that, Rassendyll was sure that Detchard knew his secret (Rassendyll was not the real King). Rassendyll knew that the Duke's men were dangerous special soldiers.

Questions & Answers**A) Choose the correct answer:****1. Why is Rassendyll afraid to continue to pretend to be the King?**

- a) Because Sapt knows who he is.
- b) Because Duke Michael knows who he is.
- c) Because he has to go back to England.
- d) Because Sapt will be a King instead.

2. Why can't the Duke kill the real King?

- a) He is already dead.
- b) Because then Rassendyll stays as the King.
- c) He does not know where he is.
- d) Because he loves his half brother.

3. The Duke and his men can't say Rassendyll isn't the real King without.....

- a) showing their guilt that they had kidnapped Johann's mother.
- b) showing their gratitude to Rassendyll as he pretended to be a King.
- c) showing their guilt that they had kidnapped the real King and killed his servant Josef.
- d) showing their anger towards Sapt and Fritz.

4. If the real King is dead, Rassendyll.....

- a) will leave Ruritania at once.
- b) will be King forever,
- c) will let Sapt to be the King.
- d) will kill the Duke to revenge the King's death.

5. Why are the Duke's men carrying spades?

- a) They are going to bury Josef.
- b) They are going to dig a hole for Rassendyll.
- c) They are going to build a new hunting lodge.
- d) They are going to look for treasures.

6. Why were the Duke's men at the hunting lodge shocked on seeing Rassendyll and Sapt?

- a) Because they are afraid of them.
- b) Because they do not have guns.
- c) Because they were not prepared for a fight.
- d) Because they do not have horses.

7. How could Rassendyll escape from the Duke's men at the hunting lodge?

- a) He escaped by a helicopter.
- b) Sapt helped him to escape.
- c) He fought the men and killed them all.
- d) He saw a gap between the men and escaped through it.

8. While Rassendyll was trying to escape from the Duke's men at the hunting lodge, he.....

- a) was shot in his leg.
- b) was shot in his finger.
- c) was killed by the Duke's men.
- d) was kidnapped by the Duke's men.

9. What reason did Rassendyll give for covering his face at the farmer's house?

- a) He told him that he was not the real King.
- b) He told him that he had a bad tooth.
- c) He told him that he had a severe headache.
- d) He told him that he was escaping from the police.

10. Who is Freyler?

- a) He is the King's personal servant.
- b) He is Sapt's servant.
- c) He is Fritz's servant.
- d) He is Rassendyll's friend.

11. What did Sapt tell Freyler about the King's injured finger?

- a) He told him that the Duke's men shot him at the hunting lodge.
- b) He told him that the King had caught his finger in a door.
- c) He told him that an animal had bitten the King's finger.
- d) He told him that the King had a dangerous disease in his finger.

12. Why doesn't Sapt tell Freyler the truth about the King's injury?

- a) Because Freyler is not a good servant.
- b) Because Freyler works with the Duke.
- c) Because Freyler hates the King.
- d) Because it is best not to trust even the best of men.

13. When Sapt and Rassendyll returned back to the palace, Fritz didn't.....

- a) recognize that the person in front of him was Rassendyll.
- b) recognize that Sapt was injured in his finger.
- c) recognize that the Duke was with them.
- d) recognize that Rassendyll was wearing pijamas.

14. Flavia sent a servant to the King's palace to.....

- a) give the King some flowers.
- b) ask about the King after the coronation.
- c) deliver the King a letter.
- d) kill the King.

15. The next day after the coronation, Sapt took three hours to.....

- a) teach Rassendyll the Ruritanian language.
- b) tell Rassendyll about the King's duties.
- c) teach Rassendyll how to drive a car.
- d) tell Rassendyll Flavia's story.

16. Why couldn't Sapt and Fritz accuse the Duke that he kidnapped the real King?

- a) Because the Duke threatened to kill them.
- b) Because they were afraid of the Duke.
- c) Because they loved the Duke very much.
- d) Because Rassendyll was a pretend King.

17. Who are the Six Men?

- a) They're six important ambassadors who Michael knows them well.
- b) They're six loyal followers to the King.
- c) They're six special soldiers who Michael keeps in his house at all times.
- d) They're six important officials at the law court.

18. What are the nationalities of the Six Men?

- a) They are all Ruritanians.
- b) They are all foreigners.
- c) Three of them were foreigners and three are Ruritanians.
- d) They are all Egyptians.

19. The three foreigners are from.....

- a) Belgium, France and Russia.
- b) Belgium, France and England.
- c) Belgium, Italy and Spain.
- d) Italy, Spain and England.

20. Who of the Six Men were with the Duke in Strelsau?

- a) The three Ruritanians.
- b) The three foreigners.
- c) All of them.
- d) No one of them.

21. Who of the Six Men were guarding the King at the castle of Zenda?

- a) The three Ruritanians.
- b) The three foreigners.
- c) All of them.
- d) No one of them.

22. What are some of the secrets that Rassendyll decided not to tell Sapt and Fritz?

- a) He decided to be popular and not to say anything bad about the Duke.
- b) He decided to be popular and to get rid of the Duke.
- c) He decided to get rid of both the King and the Duke.
- d) he decided to marry Princess Flavia.

23. The more the Ruritania people saw Rassendyll (the King), the more.....

- a) they supported the Duke.
- b) they took money from him.
- c) they would realize that he was not the real King.
- d) they would realize he cared about them and their lives.

24. Who accompanied Rassendyll during his visit to Princess Flavia?

- a) Sapt.
- b) Fritz.
- c) the Duke.
- d) He went alone.

25. Princess Flavia's room was full of.....

- a) enormous statues, mirrors and carpets.
- b) enormous furniture, paintings and flowers.
- c) enormous mirrors, paintings and beautiful furniture.
- d) enormous horses, mirrors and desks.

26. Why did Rassendyll decide not to say too much to Flavia?

- a) In order not to make her realize he was not the real King..
- b) In order to make her love him so much.
- c) In order not to make her noticed his injured finger.
- d) In order to make her suspect him.

27. Who came to visit Flavia while Rassendyll was there?

- a) Fritz.
- b) Duke Michael.
- c) Sapt.
- d) The real King.

28. When Rassendyll told Flavia that the Duke couldn't stay in Strelsau for very long, she.....

- a) smiled and laughed.
- b) looked at him strangely.
- c) shouted at him.
- d) slapped him.

29. What was the mistake Rassendyll made at Flavia's palace?

- a) He told her he was not the real King.
- b) He told her he loved Antoinette de Mauban.
- c) He let the Duke waiting outside the room for so long.
- d) He quarreled with the Duke.

30. How did Rassendyll cover his mistake when he didn't allow the Duke to enter?

- a) He said that he forgot the rules.
- b) He said that he didn't like the Duke.
- c) He said that it was Sapt's fault.
- d) He said that Flavia should have reminded him.

31. Duke Michael was not good at.....

- a) fighting with a sword.
- b) riding a horse.
- c) hiding his feelings.
- d) playing chess.

32. What did Rassendyll tell the Duke about his injured finger?

- a) He told him that one of his men shot him.
- b) He told him that he caught his finger in a door.
- c) He told him an animal bit it.
- d) He told him that he had a dangerous disease.

33. Why does Duke Michael want Rassendyll to meet his special soldiers?

- a) He wants to be friendly.
- b) He wants to frighten Rassendyll.
- c) He wants them to work for Rassendyll.
- d) He wants Rassendyll to give them a job.

34. Why did Rassendyll become sure of when Detchard smiled?

- a) He become sure that the Duke's men knew his secret.
- b) He became sure that Detchart was very funny.
- c) He became sure that the Duke's men killed the real King.
- d) He became sure that the Duke would marry Princess Flavia.

35. How did Detchard look like?

- a) He looked like a fighter and a bad character.
- b) He looked like an actor and a bad character.
- c) He looked like a fighter and a good character.
- d) He looked like firefighter and a good character.

B) Critical thinking questions:**1. What does Sapt plan to do if the real King is dead?**

✎ He plans that Rassendyll will be a king instead.

2. Why do Michael's men have spades?**What does it mean that they were going to "hide their evil work" ?**

✎ They are going to bury Josef's body so no one will know about his murder.

3. What does Rassendyll mean that "some of those evil men should join Josef"?

✎ Rassendyll means that some of them should be killed. They should join Josef in death.

4. Why does Sapt say to the servant at the secret door "All young men like to ride their horses now and then, so why not the King"?

✎ He wants the servant to think that the King was just out riding for fun. He doesn't want him to know anything about where they were. Sapt says it's best not to trust people too much.

5. Why does Rassendyll use a new servant who has never met the real King? Who is the servant replacing?

✎ The new servant would be less likely to realise that Rassendyll is not the real King. The servant is replacing Josef, who was killed by Michael's men.

6. Who are the Six Men? Where are they from? Why are only three in Strelsau?

✎ They are six special soldiers that Duke Michael keeps in his house all the time. Three are from Ruritania, one is French, one is Belgian, one is English. Sapt and Fritz assume that if only three are in Strelsau, the other three must be guarding the King.

7. Rassendyll decides to keep some of his plans secret from Sapt and Fritz. What are those plans?

✎ He plans to make himself as popular as he can, and to not say anything bad about Michael. This way, if there were a fight, some of the people would support him (the King) and not Michael. Michael would not become stronger this way.

8. Why does he visit the Princess? What does he do on the way?**How do these things make him more popular?**

✎ He wants to get the support of the Princess (for the King). On the way he buys some flowers from a poor girl and pays with a gold coin. Giving the coin makes him look generous to the people. The people like the Princess and seem to want the King to marry her, so visiting her will make the people happy.

9. Why can't Michael come into the room when the King is there?**What mistake does Rassendyll make? How does he cover up his mistake?**

✎ Michael can't come into the room without the King's permission (because the King is royal and higher than Michael). Rassendyll does not know this rule, and he makes the mistake of asking why Michael will be angry (that he isn't asked to enter the room).

✎ He covers his mistake by saying that he keeps forgetting all the rules.

10. Rassendyll says that his hand was hurt from an animal bite and that he's waiting to see if the bite is poisonous. He also says that he is sure the animal will try to bite again. Who is he really talking about, and who understands this?

✎ He is really talking about Michael (his poisoning and kidnapping of the King, and his men's shooting at Rassendyll), and Michael understands this.

11. How does Rassendyll know that the Six Men also know his secret?

✎ He knows because of the way Detchard (the Englishman) smiles at him when he is presented to him. Rassendyll knows that if one of the Six Men knows, they will all know.

12. What did Rassendyll think of the idea of being a king again?

✎ He thought it a mad and dangerous idea.

13. Why was Rassendyll against the idea of being a king again?

✎ Because the Duke and his men knew where the real King was.

14. Why couldn't the Duke and his men say that Rassendyll wasn't the real King?

✎ Because they couldn't say anything without showing their guilt.

15. What was the guilt that the Duke and his men committed?

✎ They kidnapped the real King and imprisoned him at the castle in Zenda..

16. Why did Sapt think that the real King was still alive \ was not dead?

✎ Because Sapt was sure that Duke Michael couldn't hurt the real King because the Duke was sure that Rassendyll would stay King.

17. Whose men did Sapt and Rassendyll see coming down the road from Zenda?

✎ They were Duke Michael's men.

18. Why did the Duke's men look shocked when they saw Rassendyll and Sapt attacking them?

✎ Because they were not prepared for that attack.

19. Rassendyll was a clever fighter \ warrior. Illustrate.

✎ During the fight with the Duke's men at Zenda, Rassendyll could knock one man off his horse and hit another big man with his sword.

20. Rassendyll was an observant and witty fighter \ warrior. Explain.

✎ When the Duke's men trapped him, he could see a gap between the men and he used this gap to escape.

21. What helped Rassendyll to escape from the Duke's men's trap?

✎ He saw a gap between the men.

22. What happened to Rassendyll when the Duke's men shot him?

✎ He felt a terrible pain in his finger.

23. How was Sapt when Rassendyll caught up with him after the fight?

✎ He was breathless but laughing.

24. What first aid did Sapt do when Rassendyll was shot?

✎ He put a bandage on Rassendyll's finger.

25. Why did Rassendyll cover his face when they reached a farm?

✎ In order not to be recognized by anyone.

26. What was Rassendyll's justification \ account for covering his face when they were in the farm?

✎ He said that he had a bad tooth.

27. Who was Freyler?

✎ He was one of Sapt's servants.

28. What did Rassendyll (as a king) tell Princess Flavia's servant?

✎ He asked him to send the Princess his thanks and that he had never felt better in his life.

29. Why did Rassendyll think that they couldn't accuse the Duke in public that he had kidnapped the King?

✎ Because they couldn't do that without admitting that Rassendyll was not the real King.

30. How were the Duke's Six Men divided after the coronation?

✎ The three foreigners were with the Duke in Strelsau and the three Ruritanians were holding the real King prisoner at Zenda.

31. To what extent were the Duke's Six Men loyal to him?

✎ They would do whatever the Duke asked them to do.

32. What did Rassendyll plan to do secretly as a King?

✎ He planned to make himself popular as he could and not to say anything bad about Michael.

33. Why did Rassendyll want to gain the poor's support?

✎ In order to be more popular than the Duke and at time of need, the poor might stand beside him.

34. What did Rassendyll mean by, "a distant King."?

✎ He meant that he must be much closer to his people. He didn't want to be far from their cares.

35. What did Rassendyll do in the oldest town streets that attracted a lot of interest?

✎ He stopped to buy flowers from a poor young girl with a gold coin.

36. Why did Rassendyll decide to visit Princess Flavia?

✎ Because he knew she was very popular and he wanted to gain her support.

37. Describe the guest room at Falavia's.

✎ It was full of enormous mirrors, paintings and beautiful furniture.

38. Why did Rassendyll decide to be careful on talking with Flavia?

✎ In order not to make her realize that he was not the real King.

39. Why did Rassendyll want the Duke to be nearer to him?

✎ To know what the Duke was doing.

40. What serious \ gross mistake did Rassendyll make at Flavia's house?

✎ He kept the Duke waiting for a long time outside the guest room.

41. Why couldn't the Duke enter the guest room to meet the King?

✎ Because he couldn't enter without the King's permission.

42. How did Rassendyll correct his mistake at Falavia's house?

✎ He went to bring the Duke by himself.

43. Why were the Duke's feelings always clear \ obvious?

✎ Because he didn't seem to be good at hiding his feelings.

44. Why did Detchard smile when Rassendyll spoke to him in a foreign accent?

✎ Because Detchard knew Rassendyll's secret.